

# The Heidelberg Catechism

with Bible verses in **NIV**

## The Heidelberg Catechism

### Table of Content

1. What is your only comfort in life and death?

2. What do you need to know in order to live and die in the joy of this comfort?

3. From where do you know your sins and misery?

4. What does God's law require of us?

5. Can you keep all this perfectly?

6. Did God, then, create man so wicked and perverse?

7. From where, then, did man's depraved nature come?

8. But are we so corrupt that we are totally unable to do any good and inclined to all evil?

9. Is God, then, not unjust by requiring in His law what man cannot do?

10. Will God allow such disobedience and apostasy to go unpunished?

11. But is God not also merciful?

12. Since, according to God's righteous judgment we deserve temporal and eternal punishment, how can we escape this punishment and be again received into favour?

13. Can we ourselves make this payment?

14. Can any mere creature pay for us?

15. What kind of mediator and deliverer must we seek?

16. Why must He be a true and righteous man?

17. Why must He at the same time be true God?

## The Heidelberg Catechism

### Table of Content

18. But who is that Mediator who at the same time is true God and a true and righteous man?

19. From where do you know this?

20. Are all men, then, saved by Christ just as they perished through Adam?

21. What is true faith?

22. What, then, must a Christian believe?

23. What are these articles?

24. How are these articles divided?

25. Since there is only one God, why do you speak of three persons, Father, Son, and Holy Spirit?

26. What do you believe when you say:  
I believe in God the Father almighty, Creator of heaven and earth?

27. What do you understand by the providence of God?

28. What does it benefit us to know that God has created all things and still upholds them by His providence?

29. Why is the Son of God called Jesus, that is, Saviour?

30. Do those believe in the only Saviour Jesus who seek their salvation and well-being from saints, in themselves, or anywhere else?

31. Why is He called Christ, that is, Anointed?

32. Why are you called a Christian?

33. Why is He called God's only begotten Son, since we also are children of God?

## The Heidelberg Catechism

### Table of Content

34. Why do you call Him our Lord?

35. What do you confess when you say:  
He was conceived by the Holy Spirit, born of the virgin Mary?

36. What benefit do you receive from the holy conception and birth of Christ?

37. What do you confess when you say that He suffered?

38. Why did He suffer under Pontius Pilate as judge?

39. Does it have a special meaning that Christ was crucified and did not die in a different way?

40. Why was it necessary for Christ to humble Himself even unto death?

41. Why was he buried?

42. Since Christ has died for us, why do we still have to die?

43. What further benefit do we receive from Christ's sacrifice and death on the cross?

44. Why is there added: He descended into hell?

45. How does Christ's resurrection benefit us?

46. What do you confess when you say, He ascended into heaven?

47. Is Christ, then, not with us until the end of the world, as He has promised us?

48. But are the two natures in Christ not separated from each other if His human nature is not present wherever His divinity is?

49. How does Christ's ascension into heaven benefit us?

## The Heidelberg Catechism

### Table of Content

50. Why is it added, And sits at the right hand of God?

51. How does the glory of Christ, our Head, benefit us?

52. What comfort is it to you that Christ will come to judge the living and the dead?

53. What do you believe concerning the Holy Spirit?

54. What do you believe concerning the holy catholic Christian church?

55. What do you understand by the communion of saints?

56. What do you believe concerning the forgiveness of sins?

57. What comfort does the resurrection of the body offer you?

58. What comfort do you receive from the article about the life everlasting?

59. But what does it help you now that you believe all this?

60. How are you righteous before God?

61. Why do you say that you are righteous only by faith?

62. But why can our good works not be our righteousness before God, or at least a part of it?

63. But do our good works earn nothing, even though God promises to reward them in this life and the next?

64. Does this teaching not make people careless and wicked?

65. Since then faith alone makes us share in Christ and all His benefits, where does this faith come from?

## The Heidelberg Catechism

### Table of Content

66. What are the sacraments?

67. Are both the Word and the sacraments then intended to focus our faith on the sacrifice of Jesus Christ on the cross as the only ground of our salvation?

68. How many sacraments has Christ instituted in the new covenant?

69. How does holy baptism signify and seal to you that the one sacrifice of Christ on the cross benefits you?

70. What does it mean to be washed with Christ's blood and Spirit?

71. Where has Christ promised that He will wash us with His blood and Spirit as surely as we are washed with the water of baptism?

72. Does this outward washing with water itself wash away sins?

73. Why then does the Holy Spirit call baptism the washing of regeneration and the washing away of sins?

74. Should infants, too, be baptized?

75. How does the Lord's Supper signify and seal to you that you share in Christ's one sacrifice on the cross and in all His gifts?

76. What does it mean to eat the crucified body of Christ and to drink His shed blood?

77. Where has Christ promised that He will nourish and refresh believers with His body and blood as surely as they eat of this broken bread and drink of this cup?

78. Are then the bread and wine changed into the real body and blood of Christ?

## The Heidelberg Catechism

### Table of Content

79. Why then does Christ call the bread His body and the cup His blood, or the new covenant in His blood, and why does Paul speak of a participation in the body and blood of Christ?

80. What difference is there between the Lord's supper and the papal mass?

81. Who are to come to the table of the Lord?

82. Are those also to be admitted to the Lord's supper who by their confession and life show that they are unbelieving and ungodly?

83. What are the keys of the kingdom of heaven?

84. How is the kingdom of heaven opened and closed by the preaching of the gospel?

85. How is the kingdom of heaven closed and opened by church discipline?

86. Since we have been delivered from our misery by grace alone through Christ, without any merit of our own, why must we yet do good works?

87. Can those be saved who do not turn to God from their ungrateful and impenitent walk of life?

88. What is the true repentance or conversion of man?

89. What is the dying of the old nature?

90. What is the coming to life of the new nature?

91. But what are good works?

92. What is the law of the LORD?

93. How are these commandments divided?

94. What does the LORD require in the first commandment?

## The Heidelberg Catechism

### Table of Content

95. What is idolatry?

96. What does God require in the second commandment?

97. May we then not make any image at all?

98. But may images not be tolerated in the churches as "books for the laity"?

99. What is required in the third commandment?

100. Is the blaspheming of God's Name by swearing and cursing such a grievous sin that God is angry also with those who do not prevent and forbid it as much as they can?

101. But may we swear an oath by the Name of God in a godly manner?

102. May we also swear by saints or other creatures?

103. What does God require in the fourth commandment?

104. What does God require in the fifth commandment?

105. What does God require in the sixth commandment?

106. But does this commandment speak only of killing?

107. Is it enough, then, that we do not kill our neighbour in any such way?

108. What does the seventh commandment teach us?

109. Does God in this commandment forbid nothing more than adultery and similar shameful sins?

110. What does God forbid in the eighth commandment?

111. What does God require of you in this commandment?



## The Heidelberg Catechism

### Table of Content

112. What is required in the ninth commandment?

113. What does the tenth commandment require of us?

114. But can those converted to God keep these commandments perfectly?

115. If in this life no one can keep the ten commandments perfectly, why does God have them preached so strictly?

116. Why is prayer necessary for Christians?

117. What belongs to a prayer which pleases God and is heard by Him?

118. What has God commanded us to ask of Him?

119. What is the Lord's prayer?

120. Why has Christ commanded us to address God as Our Father?

121. Why is there added, Who art in heaven?

122. What is the first petition?

123. What is the second petition?

124. What is the third petition?

125. What is the fourth petition?

126. What is the fifth petition?

127. What is the sixth petition?

128. How do you conclude your prayer?

## **The Heidelberg Catechism**

### **Table of Content**

129. What does the word Amen mean?

## Question 1

### What is your only comfort in life and death?

That I am not my own, [1] but belong with body and soul, both in life and in death, [2] to my faithful Saviour Jesus Christ. [3]  
He has fully paid for all my sins with His precious blood, [4] and has set me free from all the power of the devil. [5]  
He also preserves me in such a way [6] that without the will of my heavenly Father not a hair can fall from my head; [7]  
indeed, all things must work together for my salvation. [8] Therefore, by His Holy Spirit He also assures me of eternal life [9]  
and makes me heartily willing and ready from now on to live for Him. [10]

#### **1 Corinthians 6:19, 2** [1]

19. Do you not know that your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit, who is in you, whom you have received from God? You are not your own; 2. Do you not know that the saints will judge the world? And if you are to judge the world, are you not competent to judge trivial cases?

#### **Romans 14:7-9** [2]

7. For none of us lives to himself alone and none of us dies to himself alone. 8. If we live, we live to the Lord; and if we die, we die to the Lord. So, whether we live or die, we belong to the Lord. 9. For this very reason, Christ died and returned to life so that he might be the Lord of both the dead and the living.

#### **1 Corinthians 3:23** [3]

23. and you are of Christ, and Christ is of God.

#### **Titus 2:14** [3]

14. who gave himself for us to redeem us from all wickedness and to purify for himself a people that are his very own, eager to do what is good.

#### **1 Peter 1:18-19** [4]

18. For you know that it was not with perishable things such as silver or gold that you were redeemed from the empty way of life handed down to you from your forefathers, 19. but with the precious blood of Christ, a lamb without blemish or defect.

#### **1 John 1:7** [4]

7. But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of Jesus, his Son, purifies us from all sin.

#### **1 John 2:2** [4]

2. He is the atoning sacrifice for our sins, and not only for ours but also for the sins of the whole world.

## Question 1

### What is your only comfort in life and death?

That I am not my own, [1] but belong with body and soul, both in life and in death, [2] to my faithful Saviour Jesus Christ. [3]  
He has fully paid for all my sins with His precious blood, [4] and has set me free from all the power of the devil. [5]  
He also preserves me in such a way [6] that without the will of my heavenly Father not a hair can fall from my head; [7]  
indeed, all things must work together for my salvation. [8] Therefore, by His Holy Spirit He also assures me of eternal life [9]  
and makes me heartily willing and ready from now on to live for Him. [10]

#### **John 8:34–36** [5]

**34.** Jesus replied, “I tell you the truth, everyone who sins is a slave to sin. **35.** Now a slave has no permanent place in the family, but a son belongs to it forever. **36.** So if the Son sets you free, you will be free indeed.

#### **Hebrews 2:14–15** [5]

**14.** Since the children have flesh and blood, he too shared in their humanity so that by his death he might destroy him who holds the power of death—that is, the devil— **15.** and free those who all their lives were held in slavery by their fear of death.

#### **1 John 3:8** [5]

**8.** He who does what is sinful is of the devil, because the devil has been sinning from the beginning. The reason the Son of God appeared was to destroy the devil’s work.

#### **John 6:39, 40** [6]

**39.** And this is the will of him who sent me, that I shall lose none of all that he has given me, but raise them up at the last day. **40.** For my Father’s will is that everyone who looks to the Son and believes in him shall have eternal life, and I will raise him up at the last day.”

#### **John 10:27–30** [6]

**27.** My sheep listen to my voice; I know them, and they follow me. **28.** I give them eternal life, and they shall never perish; no one can snatch them out of my hand. **29.** My Father, who has given them to me, is greater than all; no one can snatch them out of my Father’s hand. **30.** I and the Father are one.”

#### **2 Thessalonians 3:3** [6]

**3.** But the Lord is faithful, and he will strengthen and protect you from the evil one.

## Question 1

# What is your only comfort in life and death?

That I am not my own, [1] but belong with body and soul, both in life and in death, [2] to my faithful Saviour Jesus Christ. [3]  
He has fully paid for all my sins with His precious blood, [4] and has set me free from all the power of the devil. [5]  
He also preserves me in such a way [6] that without the will of my heavenly Father not a hair can fall from my head; [7]  
indeed, all things must work together for my salvation. [8] Therefore, by His Holy Spirit He also assures me of eternal life [9]  
and makes me heartily willing and ready from now on to live for Him. [10]

### **1 Peter 1:5** [6]

5. who through faith are shielded by God's power until the coming of the salvation that is ready to be revealed in the last time.

### **Matthew 10:29-31** [7]

29. Are not two sparrows sold for a penny? Yet not one of them will fall to the ground apart from the will of your Father. 30. And even the very hairs of your head are all numbered. 31. So don't be afraid; you are worth more than many sparrows.

### **Luke 21:16-18** [7]

16. You will be betrayed even by parents, brothers, relatives and friends, and they will put some of you to death. 17. All men will hate you because of me. 18. But not a hair of your head will perish.

### **Romans 8:28** [8]

28. More Than Conquerors

And we know that in all things God works for the good of those who love him, who have been called according to his purpose.

### **Romans 8:15, 16** [9]

15. For you did not receive a spirit that makes you a slave again to fear, but you received the Spirit of sonship. And by him we cry, "Abba, Father." 16. The Spirit himself testifies with our spirit that we are God's children.

### **2 Corinthians 1:21, 22** [9]

21. Now it is God who makes both us and you stand firm in Christ. He anointed us, 22. set his seal of ownership on us, and put his Spirit in our hearts as a deposit, guaranteeing what is to come.

### **2 Corinthians 5:5** [9]

5. Now it is God who has made us for this very purpose and has given us the Spirit as a deposit, guaranteeing what is to come.

## Question 1

### What is your only comfort in life and death?

That I am not my own, [1] but belong with body and soul, both in life and in death, [2] to my faithful Saviour Jesus Christ. [3]  
He has fully paid for all my sins with His precious blood, [4] and has set me free from all the power of the devil. [5]  
He also preserves me in such a way [6] that without the will of my heavenly Father not a hair can fall from my head; [7]  
indeed, all things must work together for my salvation. [8] Therefore, by His Holy Spirit He also assures me of eternal life [9]  
and makes me heartily willing and ready from now on to live for Him. [10]

#### **Ephesians 1:13-14** [9]

13. And you also were included in Christ when you heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation. Having believed, you were marked in him with a seal, the promised Holy Spirit, 14. who is a deposit guaranteeing our inheritance until the redemption of those who are God's possession—to the praise of his glory.

#### **Romans 8:14** [10]

14. because those who are led by the Spirit of God are sons of God.

## Question 2

### What do you need to know in order to live and die in the joy of this comfort?

First, how great my sins and misery are; [1] second, how I am delivered from all my sins and misery; [2] third, how I am to be thankful to God for such deliverance. [3]

#### **Romans 3:9-10** [1]

9. No One Is Righteous

What shall we conclude then? Are we any better? Not at all! We have already made the charge that Jews and Gentiles alike are all under sin. 10. As it is written:

"There is no one righteous, not even one;

#### **1 John 1:10** [1]

10. If we claim we have not sinned, we make him out to be a liar and his word has no place in our lives.

#### **John 17:3** [2]

3. Now this is eternal life: that they may know you, the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom you have sent.

#### **Acts 4:12** [2]

12. Salvation is found in no one else, for there is no other name under heaven given to men by which we must be saved."

#### **Acts 10:43** [2]

43. All the prophets testify about him that everyone who believes in him receives forgiveness of sins through his name."

#### **Matthew 5:16** [3]

16. In the same way, let your light shine before men, that they may see your good deeds and praise your Father in heaven.

#### **Romans 6:13** [3]

13. Do not offer the parts of your body to sin, as instruments of wickedness, but rather offer yourselves to God, as those who have been brought from death to life; and offer the parts of your body to him as instruments of righteousness.

#### **Ephesians 5:8-10** [3]

8. For you were once darkness, but now you are light in the Lord. Live as children of light 9. (for the fruit of the light consists in all goodness, righteousness and truth) 10. and find out what pleases the Lord.

#### **1 Peter 2:9-10** [3]

9. But you are a chosen people, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people belonging to God, that you may declare the praises of him who called you out of darkness into his wonderful light. 10. Once you were not a people, but now you are the people of God; once you had not received mercy, but now you have received mercy.

### Question 3

## From where do you know your sins and misery?

From the law of God. [1]

### **Romans 3: 20** [1]

20. Therefore no one will be declared righteous in his sight by observing the law; rather, through the law we become conscious of sin.



#### Question 4

### What does God's law require of us?

Christ teaches us this in a summary in Matthew 22: You shall love the LORD your God with all your heart, and with all your soul, and with all your mind. [1]

This is the great and first commandment. And a second is like it, You shall love your neighbour as yourself. On these two commandments depend all the law and the prophets. [2]

#### **Deuteronomy 6:5** [1]

5. Love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your strength.

#### **Leviticus 19:18** [2]

18. "Do not seek revenge or bear a grudge against one of your people, but love your neighbor as yourself. I am the Lord.

## Question 5

### Can you keep all this perfectly?

No, [1] I am inclined by nature to hate God and my neighbour. [2]

#### **Romans 3:10, 23** [1]

10. As it is written:

"There is no one righteous, not even one; 23. for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God,

#### **1 John 1:8, 10** [1]

8. If we claim to be without sin, we deceive ourselves and the truth is not in us. 10. If we claim we have not sinned, we make him out to be a liar and his word has no place in our lives.

#### **Genesis 6:5** [2]

5. The Lord saw how great man's wickedness on the earth had become, and that every inclination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil all the time.

#### **Genesis 8:21** [2]

21. The Lord smelled the pleasing aroma and said in his heart: "Never again will I curse the ground because of man, even though every inclination of his heart is evil from childhood. And never again will I destroy all living creatures, as I have done.

#### **Jeremiah 17:9** [2]

9. The heart is deceitful above all things and beyond cure. Who can understand it?

#### **Romans 7:23** [2]

23. but I see another law at work in the members of my body, waging war against the law of my mind and making me a prisoner of the law of sin at work within my members.

#### **Romans 8:7** [2]

7. the sinful mind is hostile to God. It does not submit to God's law, nor can it do so.

#### **Ephesians 2:3** [2]

3. All of us also lived among them at one time, gratifying the cravings of our sinful nature and following its desires and thoughts. Like the rest, we were by nature objects of wrath.

#### **Titus 3:3** [2]

3. At one time we too were foolish, disobedient, deceived and enslaved by all kinds of passions and pleasures. We lived in malice and envy, being hated and hating one another.

## Question 6

### Did God, then, create man so wicked and perverse?

No, on the contrary, God created man good [1] and in His image, [2] that is, in true righteousness and holiness, [3] so that he might rightly know God His Creator, [4] heartily love Him, and live with Him in eternal blessedness to praise and glorify Him. [5]

#### **Genesis 1:31** [1]

31. God saw all that he had made, and it was very good. And there was evening, and there was morning—the sixth day.

#### **Genesis 1:26-27** [2]

26. Then God said, "Let us make man in our image, in our likeness, and let them rule over the fish of the sea and the birds of the air, over the livestock, over all the earth, and over all the creatures that move along the ground." 27. So God created man in his own image,  
in the image of God he created him;  
male and female he created them.

#### **Ephesians 4:24** [3]

24. and to put on the new self, created to be like God in true righteousness and holiness.

#### **Colossians 3:10** [4]

10. and have put on the new self, which is being renewed in knowledge in the image of its Creator.

#### **Psalms 8** [5]

1. Psalm 8

For the director of music. According to gittith. A psalm of David.

O Lord, our Lord,

how majestic is your name in all the earth!

You have set your glory

above the heavens. 2. From the lips of children and infants

you have ordained praise

because of your enemies,

to silence the foe and the avenger. 3. When I consider your

heavens,

the work of your fingers,

the moon and the stars,

which you have set in place, 4. what is man that you are mindful of him,

the son of man that you care for him? 5. You made him a little

lower than the heavenly beings

and crowned him with glory and honor. 6. You made him ruler over the works of your hands;

you put everything under his feet: 7. all flocks and herds,

and the beasts of the field, 8. the birds of the air,

and the fish of the sea,

all that swim the paths of the seas. 9. O Lord, our Lord,

how majestic is your name in all the earth!

## Question 7

### From where, then, did man's depraved nature come?

From the fall and disobedience of our first parents, Adam and Eve, in Paradise, [1] for there our nature became so corrupt [2] that we are all conceived and born in sin. [3]

#### Genesis 3 [1]

#### Romans 5:12, 18, 19 [2]

**12.** Death Through Adam, Life Through Christ  
Therefore, just as sin entered the world through one man, and death through sin, and in this way death came to all men, because all sinned— **18.** Consequently, just as the result of one trespass was condemnation for all men, so also the result of one act of righteousness was justification that brings life for all men. **19.** For just as through the disobedience of the one man the many were made sinners, so also through the obedience of the one man the many will be made righteous.

#### Psalms 51:5 [3]

**5.** Surely I was sinful at birth,  
sinful from the time my mother conceived me.

## Question 8

### But are we so corrupt that we are totally unable to do any good and inclined to all evil?

Yes, [1] unless we are regenerated by the Spirit of God. [2]

#### **Genesis 6:5** [1]

5. The Lord saw how great man's wickedness on the earth had become, and that every inclination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil all the time.

#### **Genesis 8:21** [1]

21. The Lord smelled the pleasing aroma and said in his heart: "Never again will I curse the ground because of man, even though every inclination of his heart is evil from childhood. And never again will I destroy all living creatures, as I have done.

#### **Job 14:4** [1]

4. Who can bring what is pure from the impure?  
No one!

#### **Isaiah 53:6** [1]

6. We all, like sheep, have gone astray,  
each of us has turned to his own way;  
and the Lord has laid on him  
the iniquity of us all.

#### **John 3:3-5** [2]

3. In reply Jesus declared, "I tell you the truth, no one can see the kingdom of God unless he is born again." 4. "How can a man be born when he is old?" Nicodemus asked. "Surely he cannot enter a second time into his mother's womb to be born!" 5. Jesus answered, "I tell you the truth, no one can enter the kingdom of God unless he is born of water and the Spirit.

## Question 9

### Is God, then, not unjust by requiring in His law what man cannot do?

No, for God so created man that he was able to do it. [1] But man, at the instigation of the devil, [2] in deliberate disobedience [3] robbed himself and all his descendants of these gifts. [4]

#### **Genesis 1:31** [1]

31. God saw all that he had made, and it was very good. And there was evening, and there was morning—the sixth day.

#### **Genesis 3:13** [2]

13. Then the Lord God said to the woman, “What is this you have done?”

The woman said, “The serpent deceived me, and I ate.”

#### **John 8:44** [2]

44. You belong to your father, the devil, and you want to carry out your father’s desire. He was a murderer from the beginning, not holding to the truth, for there is no truth in him. When he lies, he speaks his native language, for he is a liar and the father of lies.

#### **1 Timothy 2:13, 14** [2]

13. For Adam was formed first, then Eve. 14. And Adam was not the one deceived; it was the woman who was deceived and became a sinner.

#### **Genesis 3:6** [3]

6. When the woman saw that the fruit of the tree was good for food and pleasing to the eye, and also desirable for gaining wisdom, she took some and ate it. She also gave some to her husband, who was with her, and he ate it.

#### **Romans 5:12, 18, 19** [4]

12. Death Through Adam, Life Through Christ

Therefore, just as sin entered the world through one man, and death through sin, and in this way death came to all men, because all sinned— 18. Consequently, just as the result of one trespass was condemnation for all men, so also the result of one act of righteousness was justification that brings life for all men. 19. For just as through the disobedience of the one man the many were made sinners, so also through the obedience of the one man the many will be made righteous.

## Question 10

### Will God allow such disobedience and apostasy to go unpunished?

Certainly not. He is terribly displeased with our original sin as well as our actual sins. Therefore He will punish them by a just judgment both now and eternally, [1]

as He has declared: [2] Cursed be every one who does not abide by all things written in the book of the law, and do them (Galatians 3:10). [3]

#### **Exodus 34:7** [1]

7. maintaining love to thousands, and forgiving wickedness, rebellion and sin. Yet he does not leave the guilty unpunished; he punishes the children and their children for the sin of the fathers to the third and fourth generation.”

#### **Psalms 5:4-6** [1]

4. You are not a God who takes pleasure in evil; with you the wicked cannot dwell. 5. The arrogant cannot stand in your presence; you hate all who do wrong. 6. You destroy those who tell lies; bloodthirsty and deceitful men the Lord abhors.

#### **Psalms 7:10** [1]

10. My shield is God Most High, who saves the upright in heart.

#### **Nahum 1:2** [1]

2. The Lord's Anger Against Nineveh  
The Lord is a jealous and avenging God;  
the Lord takes vengeance and is filled with wrath.  
The Lord takes vengeance on his foes  
and maintains his wrath against his enemies.

#### **Romans 1:18** [1]

18. God's Wrath Against Mankind  
The wrath of God is being revealed from heaven against all the godlessness and wickedness of men who suppress the truth by their wickedness,

#### **Romans 5:12** [1]

12. Death Through Adam, Life Through Christ  
Therefore, just as sin entered the world through one man, and death through sin, and in this way death came to all men, because all sinned—

#### **Ephesians 5:6** [1]

6. Let no one deceive you with empty words, for because of such things God's wrath comes on those who are disobedient.

## Question 10

### **Will God allow such disobedience and apostasy to go unpunished?**

Certainly not. He is terribly displeased with our original sin as well as our actual sins. Therefore He will punish them by a just judgment both now and eternally, [1]

as He has declared: [2] Cursed be every one who does not abide by all things written in the book of the law, and do them (Galatians 3:10). [3]

#### **Hebrews 9:27** [1]

27. Just as man is destined to die once, and after that to face judgment,

#### **Deuteronomy 27:26** [2]

26. "Cursed is the man who does not uphold the words of this law by carrying them out."

Then all the people shall say, "Amen!"



## Question 11

### But is God not also merciful?

God is indeed merciful, [1] but He is also just. [2]

His justice requires that sin committed against the most high majesty of God also be punished with the most severe, that is, with everlasting, punishment of body and soul. [3]

#### **Exodus 20:6** [1]

6. but showing love to a thousand generations of those who love me and keep my commandments.

#### **Exodus 34:6-7** [1]

6. And he passed in front of Moses, proclaiming, "The Lord, the Lord, the compassionate and gracious God, slow to anger, abounding in love and faithfulness, 7. maintaining love to thousands, and forgiving wickedness, rebellion and sin. Yet he does not leave the guilty unpunished; he punishes the children and their children for the sin of the fathers to the third and fourth generation."

#### **Psalms 103:8-9** [1]

8. The Lord is compassionate and gracious, slow to anger, abounding in love. 9. He will not always accuse, nor will he harbor his anger forever;

#### **Exodus 20:5** [2]

5. You shall not bow down to them or worship them; for I, the Lord your God, am a jealous God, punishing the children for the sin of the fathers to the third and fourth generation of those who hate me,

#### **Exodus 34:7** [2]

7. maintaining love to thousands, and forgiving wickedness, rebellion and sin. Yet he does not leave the guilty unpunished; he punishes the children and their children for the sin of the fathers to the third and fourth generation."

#### **Deuteronomy 7:9-11** [2]

9. Know therefore that the Lord your God is God; he is the faithful God, keeping his covenant of love to a thousand generations of those who love him and keep his commands. 10. But those who hate him he will repay to their face by destruction; he will not be slow to repay to their face those who hate him. 11. Therefore, take care to follow the commands, decrees and laws I give you today.

## Question 11

### But is God not also merciful?

God is indeed merciful, [1] but He is also just. [2]

His justice requires that sin committed against the most high majesty of God also be punished with the most severe, that is, with everlasting, punishment of body and soul. [3]

#### **Psalms 5:4-6** [2]

4. You are not a God who takes pleasure in evil;  
with you the wicked cannot dwell. 5. The arrogant cannot stand in  
your presence;  
you hate all who do wrong. 6. You destroy those who tell lies;  
bloodthirsty and deceitful men  
the Lord abhors.

#### **Hebrews 10:30-31** [2]

30. For we know him who said, "It is mine to avenge; I will repay,"  
and again, "The Lord will judge his people." 31. It is a dreadful thing  
to fall into the hands of the living God.

#### **Matthew 25:45-46** [3]

45. "He will reply, 'I tell you the truth, whatever you did not do for  
one of the least of these, you did not do for me.' 46. "Then they will  
go away to eternal punishment, but the righteous to eternal life."

## Question 12

**Since, according to God's righteous judgment we deserve temporal and eternal punishment, how can we escape this punishment and be again received into favour?**

God demands that His justice be satisfied. [1] Therefore full payment must be made either by ourselves or by another. [2]

### **Exodus 20:5** [1]

5. You shall not bow down to them or worship them; for I, the Lord your God, am a jealous God, punishing the children for the sin of the fathers to the third and fourth generation of those who hate me,

### **Exodus 23:7** [1]

7. Have nothing to do with a false charge and do not put an innocent or honest person to death, for I will not acquit the guilty.

### **Romans 2:1-11** [1]

#### 1. God's Righteous Judgment

You, therefore, have no excuse, you who pass judgment on someone else, for at whatever point you judge the other, you are condemning yourself, because you who pass judgment do the same things. 2. Now we know that God's judgment against those who do such things is based on truth. 3. So when you, a mere man, pass judgment on them and yet do the same things, do you think you will escape God's judgment? 4. Or do you show contempt for the riches of his kindness, tolerance and patience, not realizing that God's kindness leads you toward repentance? 5. But because of your stubbornness and your unrepentant heart, you are storing up wrath against yourself for the day of God's wrath, when his righteous judgment will be revealed. 6. God "will give to each person according to what he has done." 7. To those who by persistence in doing good seek glory, honor and immortality, he will give eternal life. 8. But for those who are self-seeking and who reject the truth and follow evil, there will be wrath and anger. 9. There will be trouble and distress for every human being who does evil: first for the Jew, then for the Gentile; 10. but glory, honor and peace for everyone who does good: first for the Jew, then for the Gentile. 11. For God does not show favoritism.

## Question 12

**Since, according to God's righteous judgment we deserve temporal and eternal punishment, how can we escape this punishment and be again received into favour?**

God demands that His justice be satisfied. [1] Therefore full payment must be made either by ourselves or by another. [2]

### **Isaiah 53:11** [2]

11. After the suffering of his soul,  
he will see the light of life and be satisfied;  
by his knowledge my righteous servant will justify many,  
and he will bear their iniquities.

### **Romans 8:3, 4** [2]

3. For what the law was powerless to do in that it was weakened  
by the sinful nature, God did by sending his own Son in the  
likeness of sinful man to be a sin offering. And so he condemned  
sin in sinful man, 4. in order that the righteous requirements of  
the law might be fully met in us, who do not live according to the  
sinful nature but according to the Spirit.

### Question 13

## Can we ourselves make this payment?

Certainly not. On the contrary, we daily increase our debt. [1]

#### **Psalms 130:3** [1]

3. If you, O Lord, kept a record of sins,  
O Lord, who could stand?

#### **Matthew 6:12** [1]

12. Forgive us our debts,  
as we also have forgiven our debtors.

#### **Romans 2:4-5** [1]

4. Or do you show contempt for the riches of his kindness,  
tolerance and patience, not realizing that God's kindness leads  
you toward repentance? 5. But because of your stubbornness and  
your unrepentant heart, you are storing up wrath against yourself  
for the day of God's wrath, when his righteous judgment will be  
revealed.

## Question 14

### Can any mere creature pay for us?

No. In the first place, God will not punish another creature for the sin which man has committed. [1]

Furthermore, no mere creature can sustain the burden of God's eternal wrath against sin and deliver others from it. [2]

#### **Ezekiel 18:4, 20** [1]

**4.** For every living soul belongs to me, the father as well as the son—both alike belong to me. The soul who sins is the one who will die. **20.** The soul who sins is the one who will die. The son will not share the guilt of the father, nor will the father share the guilt of the son. The righteousness of the righteous man will be credited to him, and the wickedness of the wicked will be charged against him.

#### **Hebrews 2:14–18** [1]

**14.** Since the children have flesh and blood, he too shared in their humanity so that by his death he might destroy him who holds the power of death—that is, the devil— **15.** and free those who all their lives were held in slavery by their fear of death. **16.** For surely it is not angels he helps, but Abraham's descendants. **17.** For this reason he had to be made like his brothers in every way, in order that he might become a merciful and faithful high priest in service to God, and that he might make atonement for the sins of the people. **18.** Because he himself suffered when he was tempted, he is able to help those who are being tempted.

#### **Psalms 130:3** [2]

**3.** If you, O Lord, kept a record of sins,  
O Lord, who could stand?

#### **Nahum 1:6** [2]

**6.** Who can withstand his indignation?  
Who can endure his fierce anger?  
His wrath is poured out like fire;  
the rocks are shattered before him.

## Question 15

### What kind of mediator and deliverer must we seek?

One who is a true [1] and righteous [2] man, and yet more powerful than all creatures; that is, one who is at the same time true God. [3]

#### **1 Corinthians 15:21** [1]

21. For since death came through a man, the resurrection of the dead comes also through a man.

#### **Hebrews 2:17** [1]

17. For this reason he had to be made like his brothers in every way, in order that he might become a merciful and faithful high priest in service to God, and that he might make atonement for the sins of the people.

#### **Isaiah 53:9** [2]

9. He was assigned a grave with the wicked,  
and with the rich in his death,  
though he had done no violence,  
nor was any deceit in his mouth.

#### **2 Corinthians 5:21** [2]

21. God made him who had no sin to be sin for us, so that in him we might become the righteousness of God.

#### **Hebrews 7:26** [2]

26. Such a high priest meets our need—one who is holy, blameless, pure, set apart from sinners, exalted above the heavens.

#### **Isaiah 7:14** [3]

14. Therefore the Lord himself will give you a sign: The virgin will be with child and will give birth to a son, and will call him Immanuel.

#### **Isaiah 9:6** [3]

6. For to us a child is born,  
to us a son is given,  
and the government will be on his shoulders.  
And he will be called  
Wonderful Counselor, Mighty God,  
Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace.

#### **Jeremiah 23:6** [3]

6. In his days Judah will be saved  
and Israel will live in safety.  
This is the name by which he will be called:  
The Lord Our Righteousness.

#### **John 1:1** [3]

1. The Word Became Flesh  
In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

## Question 15

### What kind of mediator and deliverer must we seek?

One who is a true [1] and righteous [2] man, and yet more powerful than all creatures; that is, one who is at the same time true God. [3]

#### **Romans 8:3-4** [3]

3. For what the law was powerless to do in that it was weakened by the sinful nature, God did by sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful man to be a sin offering. And so he condemned sin in sinful man, 4. in order that the righteous requirements of the law might be fully met in us, who do not live according to the sinful nature but according to the Spirit.



## Question 16

### Why must He be a true and righteous man?

He must be a true man because the justice of God requires that the same human nature which has sinned should pay for sin. [1]  
He must be a righteous man because one who himself is a sinner cannot pay for others. [2]

#### **Romans 5:12, 15** [1]

**12.** Death Through Adam, Life Through Christ

Therefore, just as sin entered the world through one man, and death through sin, and in this way death came to all men, because all sinned— **15.** But the gift is not like the trespass. For if the many died by the trespass of the one man, how much more did God's grace and the gift that came by the grace of the one man, Jesus Christ, overflow to the many!

#### **1 Corinthians 15:21** [1]

**21.** For since death came through a man, the resurrection of the dead comes also through a man.

#### **Hebrews 2:14-16** [1]

**14.** Since the children have flesh and blood, he too shared in their humanity so that by his death he might destroy him who holds the power of death—that is, the devil— **15.** and free those who all their lives were held in slavery by their fear of death. **16.** For surely it is not angels he helps, but Abraham's descendants.

#### **Hebrews 7:26-27** [2]

**26.** Such a high priest meets our need—one who is holy, blameless, pure, set apart from sinners, exalted above the heavens. **27.** Unlike the other high priests, he does not need to offer sacrifices day after day, first for his own sins, and then for the sins of the people. He sacrificed for their sins once for all when he offered himself.

#### **1 Peter 3:18** [2]

**18.** For Christ died for sins once for all, the righteous for the unrighteous, to bring you to God. He was put to death in the body but made alive by the Spirit,

## Question 17

### Why must He at the same time be true God?

He must be true God so that by the power of His divine nature [1] He might bear in His human nature the burden of God's wrath, [2] and might obtain for us and restore to us righteousness and life. [3]

#### **Isaiah 9:5** [1]

5. Every warrior's boot used in battle  
and every garment rolled in blood  
will be destined for burning,  
will be fuel for the fire.

#### **Deuteronomy 4:24** [2]

24. For the Lord your God is a consuming fire, a jealous God.

#### **Nahum 1:6** [2]

6. Who can withstand his indignation?  
Who can endure his fierce anger?  
His wrath is poured out like fire;  
the rocks are shattered before him.

#### **Psalms 130:3** [2]

3. If you, O Lord, kept a record of sins,  
O Lord, who could stand?

#### **Isaiah 53:5, 11** [3]

5. But he was pierced for our transgressions,  
he was crushed for our iniquities;  
the punishment that brought us peace was upon him,  
and by his wounds we are healed. 11. After the suffering of his soul,  
he will see the light of life and be satisfied;  
by his knowledge my righteous servant will justify many,  
and he will bear their iniquities.

#### **John 3:16** [3]

16. "For God so loved the world that he gave his one and only Son,  
that whoever believes in him shall not perish but have eternal life.

#### **2 Corinthians 5:21** [3]

21. God made him who had no sin to be sin for us, so that in him we  
might become the righteousness of God.

### Question 18

## **But who is that Mediator who at the same time is true God and a true and righteous man?**

Our Lord Jesus Christ, [1] whom God made our wisdom, our righteousness and sanctification and redemption (1 Corinthians 1:30). [2]

#### **Matthew 1:21-23** [1]

21. She will give birth to a son, and you are to give him the name Jesus, because he will save his people from their sins.” 22. All this took place to fulfill what the Lord had said through the prophet: 23. “The virgin will be with child and will give birth to a son, and they will call him Immanuel”—which means, “God with us.”

#### **Luke 2:11** [1]

11. Today in the town of David a Savior has been born to you; he is Christ the Lord.

#### **1 Timothy 2:5** [1]

5. For there is one God and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus,

#### **1 Timothy 3:16** [1]

16. Beyond all question, the mystery of godliness is great:  
He appeared in a body,  
was vindicated by the Spirit,  
was seen by angels,  
was preached among the nations,  
was believed on in the world,  
was taken up in glory.

## Question 19

### From where do you know this?

From the holy gospel, which God Himself first revealed in Paradise. [1] Later, He had it proclaimed by the patriarchs [2] and prophets, [3] and foreshadowed by the sacrifices and other ceremonies of the law. [4] Finally, He had it fulfilled through His only Son. [5]

#### **Genesis 3:15** [1]

15. And I will put enmity  
between you and the woman,  
and between your offspring and hers;  
he will crush your head,  
and you will strike his heel."

#### **Isaiah 53** [3]

#### **Genesis 12:3** [2]

3. I will bless those who bless you,  
and whoever curses you I will curse;  
and all peoples on earth  
will be blessed through you."

#### **Genesis 22:18** [2]

18. and through your offspring all nations on earth will be blessed,  
because you have obeyed me."

#### **Genesis 49:10** [2]

10. The scepter will not depart from Judah,  
nor the ruler's staff from between his feet,  
until he comes to whom it belongs  
and the obedience of the nations is his.

## Question 19

### From where do you know this?

From the holy gospel, which God Himself first revealed in Paradise. [1] Later, He had it proclaimed by the patriarchs [2] and prophets, [3] and foreshadowed by the sacrifices and other ceremonies of the law. [4] Finally, He had it fulfilled through His only Son. [5]

#### **Jeremiah 23:5, 6** [3]

5. "The days are coming," declares the Lord,  
"when I will raise up to David a righteous Branch,  
a King who will reign wisely  
and do what is just and right in the land. 6. In his days Judah will be  
saved  
and Israel will live in safety.  
This is the name by which he will be called:  
The Lord Our Righteousness.

#### **Micah 7:18-20** [3]

18. Who is a God like you,  
who pardons sin and forgives the transgression  
of the remnant of his inheritance?  
You do not stay angry forever  
but delight to show mercy. 19. You will again have compassion on  
us;  
you will tread our sins underfoot  
and hurl all our iniquities into the depths of the sea. 20. You will be  
true to Jacob,  
and show mercy to Abraham,  
as you pledged on oath to our fathers  
in days long ago.

#### **Acts 10:43** [3]

43. All the prophets testify about him that everyone who believes  
in him receives forgiveness of sins through his name."

#### **Hebrews 1:1** [3]

1. The Son Superior to Angels  
In the past God spoke to our forefathers through the prophets at  
many times and in various ways,

#### **Leviticus 1:7** [4]

7. The sons of Aaron the priest are to put fire on the altar and  
arrange wood on the fire.

#### **John 5:46** [4]

46. If you believed Moses, you would believe me, for he wrote  
about me.

## Question 19

### From where do you know this?

From the holy gospel, which God Himself first revealed in Paradise. [1] Later, He had it proclaimed by the patriarchs [2] and prophets, [3] and foreshadowed by the sacrifices and other ceremonies of the law. [4] Finally, He had it fulfilled through His only Son. [5]

#### **Hebrews 10:1-10** [4]

##### **1. Christ's Sacrifice Once for All**

The law is only a shadow of the good things that are coming—not the realities themselves. For this reason it can never, by the same sacrifices repeated endlessly year after year, make perfect those who draw near to worship. **2.** If it could, would they not have stopped being offered? For the worshipers would have been cleansed once for all, and would no longer have felt guilty for their sins. **3.** But those sacrifices are an annual reminder of sins, **4.** because it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins. **5.** Therefore, when Christ came into the world, he said: "Sacrifice and offering you did not desire, but a body you prepared for me; **6.** with burnt offerings and sin offerings you were not pleased. **7.** Then I said, 'Here I am—it is written about me in the scroll—I have come to do your will, O God.'" **8.** First he said, "Sacrifices and offerings, burnt offerings and sin offerings you did not desire, nor were you pleased with them" (although the law required them to be made). **9.** Then he said, "Here I am, I have come to do your will." He sets aside the first to establish the second. **10.** And by that will, we have been made holy through the sacrifice of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.

#### **Romans 10:4** [5]

**4.** Christ is the end of the law so that there may be righteousness for everyone who believes.

#### **Galatians 4:4-5** [5]

**4.** But when the time had fully come, God sent his Son, born of a woman, born under law, **5.** to redeem those under law, that we might receive the full rights of sons.

#### **Colossians 2:17** [5]

**17.** These are a shadow of the things that were to come; the reality, however, is found in Christ.

## Question 20

### Are all men, then, saved by Christ just as they perished through Adam?

No. Only those are saved who by a true faith are grafted into Christ and accept all His benefits. [1]

#### **Matthew 7:14** [1]

14. But small is the gate and narrow the road that leads to life, and only a few find it.

#### **John 1:12** [1]

12. Yet to all who received him, to those who believed in his name, he gave the right to become children of God—

#### **John 3:16** [1]

16. "For God so loved the world that he gave his one and only Son, that whoever believes in him shall not perish but have eternal life.

#### **John 3:18** [1]

18. Whoever believes in him is not condemned, but whoever does not believe stands condemned already because he has not believed in the name of God's one and only Son.

#### **John 3:36** [1]

36. Whoever believes in the Son has eternal life, but whoever rejects the Son will not see life, for God's wrath remains on him."

#### **Romans 11:16-21** [1]

16. If the part of the dough offered as firstfruits is holy, then the whole batch is holy; if the root is holy, so are the branches. 17. If some of the branches have been broken off, and you, though a wild olive shoot, have been grafted in among the others and now share in the nourishing sap from the olive root, 18. do not boast over those branches. If you do, consider this: You do not support the root, but the root supports you. 19. You will say then, "Branches were broken off so that I could be grafted in." 20. Granted. But they were broken off because of unbelief, and you stand by faith. Do not be arrogant, but be afraid. 21. For if God did not spare the natural branches, he will not spare you either.

## Question 21

### What is true faith?

True faith is a sure knowledge whereby I accept as true all that God has revealed to us in His Word. [1]

At the same time it is a firm confidence [2] that not only to others, but also to me, [3]

God has granted forgiveness of sins, everlasting righteousness, and salvation, [4] out of mere grace, only for the sake of Christ's merits. [5]

This faith the Holy Spirit works in my heart by the gospel. [6]

#### **John 17:3** [1]

3. Now this is eternal life: that they may know you, the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom you have sent.

#### **John 17:17** [1]

17. Sanctify them by the truth; your word is truth.

#### **Hebrews 11:1-3** [1]

1. By Faith

Now faith is being sure of what we hope for and certain of what we do not see. 2. This is what the ancients were commended for.

3. By faith we understand that the universe was formed at God's command, so that what is seen was not made out of what was visible.

#### **James 2:19** [1]

19. You believe that there is one God. Good! Even the demons believe that—and shudder.

#### **Romans 4:18-21** [2]

18. Against all hope, Abraham in hope believed and so became the father of many nations, just as it had been said to him, "So shall your offspring be." 19. Without weakening in his faith, he faced the fact that his body was as good as dead—since he was about a hundred years old—and that Sarah's womb was also dead. 20. Yet he did not waver through unbelief regarding the promise of God, but was strengthened in his faith and gave glory to God, 21. being fully persuaded that God had power to do what he had promised.

#### **Romans 5:1** [2]

1. Peace and Joy

Therefore, since we have been justified through faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ,

#### **Romans 10:10** [2]

10. For it is with your heart that you believe and are justified, and it is with your mouth that you confess and are saved.



## Question 21

### What is true faith?

True faith is a sure knowledge whereby I accept as true all that God has revealed to us in His Word. [1]

At the same time it is a firm confidence [2] that not only to others, but also to me, [3]

God has granted forgiveness of sins, everlasting righteousness, and salvation, [4] out of mere grace, only for the sake of Christ's merits. [5]

This faith the Holy Spirit works in my heart by the gospel. [6]

#### **Hebrews 4:16** [2]

**16.** Let us then approach the throne of grace with confidence, so that we may receive mercy and find grace to help us in our time of need.

#### **Galatians 2:20** [3]

**20.** I have been crucified with Christ and I no longer live, but Christ lives in me. The life I live in the body, I live by faith in the Son of God, who loved me and gave himself for me.

#### **Romans 1:17** [4]

**17.** For in the gospel a righteousness from God is revealed, a righteousness that is by faith from first to last, just as it is written: "The righteous will live by faith."

#### **Hebrews 10:10** [4]

**10.** And by that will, we have been made holy through the sacrifice of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.

#### **Romans 3:20-26** [5]

**20.** Therefore no one will be declared righteous in his sight by observing the law; rather, through the law we become conscious of sin. **21.** Righteousness Through Faith  
But now a righteousness from God, apart from law, has been made known, to which the Law and the Prophets testify. **22.** This righteousness from God comes through faith in Jesus Christ to all who believe. There is no difference, **23.** for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God, **24.** and are justified freely by his grace through the redemption that came by Christ Jesus. **25.** God presented him as a sacrifice of atonement, through faith in his blood. He did this to demonstrate his justice, because in his forbearance he had left the sins committed beforehand unpunished— **26.** he did it to demonstrate his justice at the present time, so as to be just and the one who justifies those who have faith in Jesus.

## Question 21

### What is true faith?

True faith is a sure knowledge whereby I accept as true all that God has revealed to us in His Word. [1]

At the same time it is a firm confidence [2] that not only to others, but also to me, [3]

God has granted forgiveness of sins, everlasting righteousness, and salvation, [4] out of mere grace, only for the sake of Christ's merits. [5]

This faith the Holy Spirit works in my heart by the gospel. [6]

#### **Galatians 2:16** [5]

16. know that a man is not justified by observing the law, but by faith in Jesus Christ. So we, too, have put our faith in Christ Jesus that we may be justified by faith in Christ and not by observing the law, because by observing the law no one will be justified.

#### **Ephesians 2:8-10** [5]

8. For it is by grace you have been saved, through faith—and this not from yourselves, it is the gift of God— 9. not by works, so that no one can boast. 10. For we are God's workmanship, created in Christ Jesus to do good works, which God prepared in advance for us to do.

#### **Acts 16:14** [6]

14. One of those listening was a woman named Lydia, a dealer in purple cloth from the city of Thyatira, who was a worshiper of God. The Lord opened her heart to respond to Paul's message.

#### **Romans 1:16** [6]

16. I am not ashamed of the gospel, because it is the power of God for the salvation of everyone who believes: first for the Jew, then for the Gentile.

#### **Romans 10:17** [6]

17. Consequently, faith comes from hearing the message, and the message is heard through the word of Christ.

#### **1 Corinthians 1:21** [6]

21. For since in the wisdom of God the world through its wisdom did not know him, God was pleased through the foolishness of what was preached to save those who believe.

## Question 22

### What, then, must a Christian believe?

All that is promised us in the Gospel, [1] which the articles of our catholic and undoubted Christian faith teach us in a summary. [2]

#### **Matthew 28:19** [1]

19. Therefore go and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit,

#### **John 20:30-31** [1]

30. Jesus did many other miraculous signs in the presence of his disciples, which are not recorded in this book. 31. But these are written that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God, and that by believing you may have life in his name.

### Question 23

## What are these articles?

III.1.I believe in God the Father almighty, III.1. Creator of heaven and earth. III.2.I believe in Jesus Christ, III.2.His only begotten Son, our Lord; III.3.He was conceived by the Holy Spirit, III.3.born of the virgin Mary; III.4.suffered under Pontius Pilate, III.4.was crucified, dead, and buried; III.4.He descended into hell; III.5.On the third day He arose from the dead; III.6.He ascended into heaven, III.6.and sits at the right hand III.6.of God the Father almighty; III.7.from there He will come to judge III.7.the living and the dead. III.8.I believe in the Holy Spirit; III.9.I believe a holy catholic Christian church, III.9.the communion of saints; III.10.the forgiveness of sins; III.11.the resurrection of the body; III.12.and the life everlasting. [1]

## Question 24

### **How are these articles divided?**

Into three parts: the first is about God the Father and our creation; the second about God the Son and our redemption; the third about God the Holy Spirit and our sanctification. [1]

## Question 25

# Since there is only one God, why do you speak of three persons, Father, Son, and Holy Spirit?

Because God has so revealed Himself in His Word [1] that these three distinct persons are the one, true, eternal God. [2]

### **Deuteronomy 6:4** [1]

4. Hear, O Israel: The Lord our God, the Lord is one.

### **Isaiah 44:6** [1]

6. The Lord, Not Idols

"This is what the Lord says—

Israel's King and Redeemer, the Lord Almighty:

I am the first and I am the last;

apart from me there is no God.

### **Isaiah 45:5** [1]

5. I am the Lord, and there is no other;

apart from me there is no God.

I will strengthen you,

though you have not acknowledged me,

### **1 Corinthians 8:4** [1]

4. So then, about eating food sacrificed to idols: We know that an idol is nothing at all in the world and that there is no God but one.

### **1 Corinthians 8:6** [1]

6. yet for us there is but one God, the Father, from whom all things came and for whom we live; and there is but one Lord, Jesus Christ, through whom all things came and through whom we live.

### **Genesis 1:2-3** [2]

2. Now the earth was formless and empty, darkness was over the surface of the deep, and the Spirit of God was hovering over the waters. 3. And God said, "Let there be light," and there was light.

### **Isaiah 61:1** [2]

1. The Year of the Lord's Favor

The Spirit of the Sovereign Lord is on me,

because the Lord has anointed me

to preach good news to the poor.

He has sent me to bind up the brokenhearted,

to proclaim freedom for the captives

and release from darkness for the prisoners,

## Question 25

# Since there is only one God, why do you speak of three persons, Father, Son, and Holy Spirit?

Because God has so revealed Himself in His Word [1] that these three distinct persons are the one, true, eternal God. [2]

### **Isaiah 63:8-10** [2]

8. He said, "Surely they are my people, sons who will not be false to me"; and so he became their Savior. 9. In all their distress he too was distressed, and the angel of his presence saved them. In his love and mercy he redeemed them; he lifted them up and carried them all the days of old. 10. Yet they rebelled and grieved his Holy Spirit. So he turned and became their enemy and he himself fought against them.

### **Matthew 3:16-17** [2]

16. As soon as Jesus was baptized, he went up out of the water. At that moment heaven was opened, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove and lighting on him. 17. And a voice from heaven said, "This is my Son, whom I love; with him I am well pleased."

### **Matthew 28:18-19** [2]

18. Then Jesus came to them and said, "All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. 19. Therefore go and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit,

### **Luke 4:18** [2]

18. "The Spirit of the Lord is on me, because he has anointed me to preach good news to the poor. He has sent me to proclaim freedom for the prisoners and recovery of sight for the blind, to release the oppressed,

### **John 14:26** [2]

26. But the Counselor, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in my name, will teach you all things and will remind you of everything I have said to you.

## Question 25

# Since there is only one God, why do you speak of three persons, Father, Son, and Holy Spirit?

Because God has so revealed Himself in His Word [1] that these three distinct persons are the one, true, eternal God. [2]

### **John 15:26** [2]

26. "When the Counselor comes, whom I will send to you from the Father, the Spirit of truth who goes out from the Father, he will testify about me.

### **2 Corinthians 13:14** [2]

14. May the grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the fellowship of the Holy Spirit be with you all.

### **Galatians 4:6** [2]

6. Because you are sons, God sent the Spirit of his Son into our hearts, the Spirit who calls out, "Abba, Father."

### **Titus 3:5-6** [2]

5. he saved us, not because of righteous things we had done, but because of his mercy. He saved us through the washing of rebirth and renewal by the Holy Spirit, 6. whom he poured out on us generously through Jesus Christ our Savior,



## Question 26

**What do you believe when you say:**

**I believe in God the Father almighty, Creator of heaven and earth?**

That the eternal Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who out of nothing created heaven and earth and all that is in them, [1]  
and who still upholds and governs them by His eternal counsel and providence, [2]  
is, for the sake of Christ His Son, my God and my Father. [3]  
In Him I trust so completely as to have no doubt that He will provide me with all things necessary for body and soul, [4]  
and will also turn to my good whatever adversity He sends me in this life of sorrow. [5] He is able to do so as almighty God, [6]  
and willing also as a faithful Father. [7]

**Genesis 1** [1]

**Genesis 2** [1]

## Question 26

**What do you believe when you say:**

**I believe in God the Father almighty, Creator of heaven and earth?**

That the eternal Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who out of nothing created heaven and earth and all that is in them, [1]  
and who still upholds and governs them by His eternal counsel and providence, [2]  
is, for the sake of Christ His Son, my God and my Father. [3]  
In Him I trust so completely as to have no doubt that He will provide me with all things necessary for body and soul, [4]  
and will also turn to my good whatever adversity He sends me in this life of sorrow. [5] He is able to do so as almighty God, [6]  
and willing also as a faithful Father. [7]

### **Exodus 20:11** [1]

11. For in six days the Lord made the heavens and the earth, the sea, and all that is in them, but he rested on the seventh day. Therefore the Lord blessed the Sabbath day and made it holy.

### **Job 38** [1]

## Question 26

**What do you believe when you say:**

**I believe in God the Father almighty, Creator of heaven and earth?**

That the eternal Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who out of nothing created heaven and earth and all that is in them, [1]  
and who still upholds and governs them by His eternal counsel and providence, [2]  
is, for the sake of Christ His Son, my God and my Father. [3]  
In Him I trust so completely as to have no doubt that He will provide me with all things necessary for body and soul, [4]  
and will also turn to my good whatever adversity He sends me in this life of sorrow. [5] He is able to do so as almighty God, [6]  
and willing also as a faithful Father. [7]

**Job 39** [1]

**Psalm 33:6** [1]

6. By the word of the Lord were the heavens made,  
their starry host by the breath of his mouth.

**Isaiah 44:24** [1]

24. Jerusalem to Be Inhabited

“This is what the Lord says—  
your Redeemer, who formed you in the womb:  
I am the Lord,  
who has made all things,  
who alone stretched out the heavens,  
who spread out the earth by myself,

**Acts 4:24** [1]

24. When they heard this, they raised their voices together in  
prayer to God. “Sovereign Lord,” they said, “you made the heaven  
and the earth and the sea, and everything in them.

## Question 26

### What do you believe when you say:

### I believe in God the Father almighty, Creator of heaven and earth?

That the eternal Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who out of nothing created heaven and earth and all that is in them, [1]  
and who still upholds and governs them by His eternal counsel and providence, [2]  
is, for the sake of Christ His Son, my God and my Father. [3]  
In Him I trust so completely as to have no doubt that He will provide me with all things necessary for body and soul, [4]  
and will also turn to my good whatever adversity He sends me in this life of sorrow. [5] He is able to do so as almighty God, [6]  
and willing also as a faithful Father. [7]

#### **Acts 14:15** [1]

15. "Men, why are you doing this? We too are only men, human like you. We are bringing you good news, telling you to turn from these worthless things to the living God, who made heaven and earth and sea and everything in them.

#### **Psalm 104:27-30** [2]

27. These all look to you  
to give them their food at the proper time. 28. When you give it to them,  
they gather it up;  
when you open your hand,  
they are satisfied with good things. 29. When you hide your face,  
they are terrified;  
when you take away their breath,  
they die and return to the dust. 30. When you send your Spirit,  
they are created,  
and you renew the face of the earth.

#### **Matthew 6:30** [2]

30. If that is how God clothes the grass of the field, which is here today and tomorrow is thrown into the fire, will he not much more clothe you, O you of little faith?

## Question 26

### What do you believe when you say:

### I believe in God the Father almighty, Creator of heaven and earth?

That the eternal Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who out of nothing created heaven and earth and all that is in them, [1]  
and who still upholds and governs them by His eternal counsel and providence, [2]  
is, for the sake of Christ His Son, my God and my Father. [3]  
In Him I trust so completely as to have no doubt that He will provide me with all things necessary for body and soul, [4]  
and will also turn to my good whatever adversity He sends me in this life of sorrow. [5] He is able to do so as almighty God, [6]  
and willing also as a faithful Father. [7]

#### **Matthew 10:29** [2]

29. Are not two sparrows sold for a penny? Yet not one of them will fall to the ground apart from the will of your Father.

#### **Ephesians 1:11** [2]

11. In him we were also chosen, having been predestined according to the plan of him who works out everything in conformity with the purpose of his will,

#### **John 1:12-13** [3]

12. Yet to all who received him, to those who believed in his name, he gave the right to become children of God— 13. children born not of natural descent, nor of human decision or a husband's will, but born of God.

#### **Romans 8:15-16** [3]

15. For you did not receive a spirit that makes you a slave again to fear, but you received the Spirit of sonship. And by him we cry, "Abba, Father." 16. The Spirit himself testifies with our spirit that we are God's children.

#### **Galatians 4:4-7** [3]

4. But when the time had fully come, God sent his Son, born of a woman, born under law, 5. to redeem those under law, that we might receive the full rights of sons. 6. Because you are sons, God sent the Spirit of his Son into our hearts, the Spirit who calls out, "Abba, Father." 7. So you are no longer a slave, but a son; and since you are a son, God has made you also an heir.

#### **Ephesians 1:5** [3]

5. he predestined us to be adopted as his sons through Jesus Christ, in accordance with his pleasure and will—

## Question 26

**What do you believe when you say:**

**I believe in God the Father almighty, Creator of heaven and earth?**

That the eternal Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who out of nothing created heaven and earth and all that is in them, [1]  
and who still upholds and governs them by His eternal counsel and providence, [2]  
is, for the sake of Christ His Son, my God and my Father. [3]  
In Him I trust so completely as to have no doubt that He will provide me with all things necessary for body and soul, [4]  
and will also turn to my good whatever adversity He sends me in this life of sorrow. [5] He is able to do so as almighty God, [6]  
and willing also as a faithful Father. [7]

**Psalms 55:22** [4]

22. Cast your cares on the Lord  
and he will sustain you;  
he will never let the righteous fall.

**Luke 12:22-31** [4]

**Matthew 6:25-26** [4]

25. Do Not Worry

"Therefore I tell you, do not worry about your life, what you will eat  
or drink; or about your body, what you will wear. Is not life more  
important than food, and the body more important than clothes?"

26. Look at the birds of the air; they do not sow or reap or store  
away in barns, and yet your heavenly Father feeds them. Are you  
not much more valuable than they?

## Question 26

**What do you believe when you say:**

**I believe in God the Father almighty, Creator of heaven and earth?**

That the eternal Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who out of nothing created heaven and earth and all that is in them, [1]  
and who still upholds and governs them by His eternal counsel and providence, [2]  
is, for the sake of Christ His Son, my God and my Father. [3]  
In Him I trust so completely as to have no doubt that He will provide me with all things necessary for body and soul, [4]  
and will also turn to my good whatever adversity He sends me in this life of sorrow. [5] He is able to do so as almighty God, [6]  
and willing also as a faithful Father. [7]

**Romans 8:28** [5]

**28.** More Than Conquerors

And we know that in all things God works for the good of those  
who love him, who have been called according to his purpose.

**Romans 8:31-39** [6]

**Genesis 18:14** [6]

**14.** Is anything too hard for the Lord? I will return to you at the  
appointed time next year and Sarah will have a son."

## Question 26

**What do you believe when you say:**

**I believe in God the Father almighty, Creator of heaven and earth?**

That the eternal Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who out of nothing created heaven and earth and all that is in them, [1]  
and who still upholds and governs them by His eternal counsel and providence, [2]  
is, for the sake of Christ His Son, my God and my Father. [3]  
In Him I trust so completely as to have no doubt that He will provide me with all things necessary for body and soul, [4]  
and will also turn to my good whatever adversity He sends me in this life of sorrow. [5] He is able to do so as almighty God, [6]  
and willing also as a faithful Father. [7]

### **Matthew 6:32-33** [7]

**32.** For the pagans run after all these things, and your heavenly Father knows that you need them. **33.** But seek first his kingdom and his righteousness, and all these things will be given to you as well.

### **Matthew 7:9-11** [7]

**9.** "Which of you, if his son asks for bread, will give him a stone? **10.** Or if he asks for a fish, will give him a snake? **11.** If you, then, though you are evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father in heaven give good gifts to those who ask him!



## Question 27

### What do you understand by the providence of God?

God's providence is His almighty and ever present power, [1]  
whereby, as with His hand, He still upholds heaven and earth and all creatures, [2]  
and so governs them that leaf and blade, rain and drought, fruitful and barren years, food and drink, health and sickness, riches and poverty,  
[3]  
indeed, all things, come not by chance [4] but by His fatherly hand. [5]

#### **Jeremiah 23:23-24** [1]

23. "Am I only a God nearby,"  
declares the Lord,  
"and not a God far away? 24. Can anyone hide in secret places  
so that I cannot see him?"  
declares the Lord.  
"Do not I fill heaven and earth?"  
declares the Lord.

#### **Acts 17:24-28** [1]

24. "The God who made the world and everything in it is the Lord  
of heaven and earth and does not live in temples built by hands.  
25. And he is not served by human hands, as if he needed  
anything, because he himself gives all men life and breath and  
everything else. 26. From one man he made every nation of men,  
that they should inhabit the whole earth; and he determined the  
times set for them and the exact places where they should live.  
27. God did this so that men would seek him and perhaps reach  
out for him and find him, though he is not far from each one of us.  
28. 'For in him we live and move and have our being.' As some of  
your own poets have said, 'We are his offspring.'

Table of Content

#### **Hebrews 1:3** [2]

3. The Son is the radiance of God's glory and the exact  
representation of his being, sustaining all things by his powerful  
word. After he had provided purification for sins, he sat down at  
the right hand of the Majesty in heaven.

#### **Jeremiah 5:24** [3]

24. They do not say to themselves,  
'Let us fear the Lord our God,  
who gives autumn and spring rains in season,  
who assures us of the regular weeks of harvest.'

## Question 27

### What do you understand by the providence of God?

God's providence is His almighty and ever present power, [1]  
whereby, as with His hand, He still upholds heaven and earth and all creatures, [2]  
and so governs them that leaf and blade, rain and drought, fruitful and barren years, food and drink, health and sickness, riches and poverty,  
[3]  
indeed, all things, come not by chance [4] but by His fatherly hand. [5]

#### **Acts 14:15-17** [3]

15. "Men, why are you doing this? We too are only men, human like you. We are bringing you good news, telling you to turn from these worthless things to the living God, who made heaven and earth and sea and everything in them. 16. In the past, he let all nations go their own way. 17. Yet he has not left himself without testimony: He has shown kindness by giving you rain from heaven and crops in their seasons; he provides you with plenty of food and fills your hearts with joy."

#### **John 9:3** [3]

3. "Neither this man nor his parents sinned," said Jesus, "but this happened so that the work of God might be displayed in his life."

#### **Proverbs 22:2** [3]

2. Rich and poor have this in common:  
The Lord is the Maker of them all.

#### **Proverbs 16:33** [4]

33. The lot is cast into the lap,  
but its every decision is from the Lord.

#### **Matthew 10:29** [5]

29. Are not two sparrows sold for a penny? Yet not one of them will fall to the ground apart from the will of your Father.

## Question 28

# What does it benefit us to know that God has created all things and still upholds them by His providence?

We can be patient in adversity, [1] thankful in prosperity, [2] and with a view to the future we can have a firm confidence in our faithful God and Father that no creature shall separate us from His love; [3] for all creatures are so completely in His hand that without His will they cannot so much as move. [4]

### **Job 1:21-22** [1]

21. and said:

"Naked I came from my mother's womb,  
and naked I will depart.

The Lord gave and the Lord has taken away;  
may the name of the Lord be praised." 22. In all this, Job did not  
sin by charging God with wrongdoing.

### **Psalms 39:10** [1]

10. Remove your scourge from me;  
I am overcome by the blow of your hand.

### **James 1:3** [1]

3. because you know that the testing of your faith develops  
perseverance.

### **Deuteronomy 8:10** [2]

10. When you have eaten and are satisfied, praise the Lord your  
God for the good land he has given you.

### **1 Thessalonians 5:18** [2]

18. give thanks in all circumstances, for this is God's will for you in  
Christ Jesus.

### **Psalms 55:22** [3]

22. Cast your cares on the Lord  
and he will sustain you;  
he will never let the righteous fall.

### **Romans 5:3-5** [3]

3. Not only so, but we also rejoice in our sufferings, because we  
know that suffering produces perseverance; 4. perseverance,  
character; and character, hope. 5. And hope does not disappoint  
us, because God has poured out his love into our hearts by the  
Holy Spirit, whom he has given us.

## Question 28

# What does it benefit us to know that God has created all things and still upholds them by His providence?

We can be patient in adversity, [1] thankful in prosperity, [2] and with a view to the future we can have a firm confidence in our faithful God and Father that no creature shall separate us from His love; [3] for all creatures are so completely in His hand that without His will they cannot so much as move. [4]

### **Romans 8:38-39** [3]

**38.** For I am convinced that neither death nor life, neither angels nor demons, neither the present nor the future, nor any powers, **39.** neither height nor depth, nor anything else in all creation, will be able to separate us from the love of God that is in Christ Jesus our Lord.

### **Job 1:12** [4]

**12.** The Lord said to Satan, "Very well, then, everything he has is in your hands, but on the man himself do not lay a finger." Then Satan went out from the presence of the Lord.

### **Job 2:6** [4]

**6.** The Lord said to Satan, "Very well, then, he is in your hands; but you must spare his life."

### **Proverbs 21:1** [4]

**1.** The king's heart is in the hand of the Lord; he directs it like a watercourse wherever he pleases.

### **Acts 17:24-28** [4]

**24.** "The God who made the world and everything in it is the Lord of heaven and earth and does not live in temples built by hands. **25.** And he is not served by human hands, as if he needed anything, because he himself gives all men life and breath and everything else. **26.** From one man he made every nation of men, that they should inhabit the whole earth; and he determined the times set for them and the exact places where they should live. **27.** God did this so that men would seek him and perhaps reach out for him and find him, though he is not far from each one of us. **28.** 'For in him we live and move and have our being.' As some of your own poets have said, 'We are his offspring.'

## Question 29

### Why is the Son of God called Jesus, that is, Saviour?

Because He saves us from all our sins, [1] and because salvation is not to be sought or found in anyone else. [2]

#### **Matthew 1:21** [1]

21. She will give birth to a son, and you are to give him the name Jesus, because he will save his people from their sins."

#### **Hebrews 7:25** [1]

25. Therefore he is able to save completely those who come to God through him, because he always lives to intercede for them.

#### **Isaiah 43:11** [2]

11. I, even I, am the Lord,  
and apart from me there is no savior.

#### **John 15:4-5** [2]

4. Remain in me, and I will remain in you. No branch can bear fruit by itself; it must remain in the vine. Neither can you bear fruit unless you remain in me. 5. "I am the vine; you are the branches. If a man remains in me and I in him, he will bear much fruit; apart from me you can do nothing.

#### **Acts 4:11-12** [2]

11. He is  
"the stone you builders rejected,  
which has become the capstone." 12. Salvation is found in no one else, for there is no other name under heaven given to men by which we must be saved."

#### **1 Timothy 2:5** [2]

5. For there is one God and one mediator between God and men,  
the man Christ Jesus,

### Question 30

## **Do those believe in the only Saviour Jesus who seek their salvation and well-being from saints, in themselves, or anywhere else?**

No. Though they boast of Him in words, they in fact deny the only Saviour Jesus. [1]

For one of two things must be true: either Jesus is not a complete Saviour, or those who by true faith accept this Saviour must find in Him all that is necessary for their salvation. [2]

#### **1 Corinthians 1:12-13** [1]

12. What I mean is this: One of you says, "I follow Paul"; another, "I follow Apollos"; another, "I follow Cephas"; still another, "I follow Christ." 13. Is Christ divided? Was Paul crucified for you? Were you baptized into the name of Paul?

#### **Galatians 5:4** [1]

4. You who are trying to be justified by law have been alienated from Christ; you have fallen away from grace.

#### **Colossians 1:19-20** [2]

19. For God was pleased to have all his fullness dwell in him, 20. and through him to reconcile to himself all things, whether things on earth or things in heaven, by making peace through his blood, shed on the cross.

#### **Colossians 2:10** [2]

10. and you have been given fullness in Christ, who is the head over every power and authority.

#### **1 John 1:7** [2]

7. But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of Jesus, his Son, purifies us from all sin.

## Question 31

### Why is He called Christ, that is, Anointed?

Because He has been ordained by God the Father, and anointed with the Holy Spirit, [1] to be our chief Prophet and Teacher, [2] who has fully revealed to us the secret counsel and will of God concerning our redemption; [3] our only High Priest, [4] who by the one sacrifice of His body has redeemed us, [5] and who continually intercedes for us before the Father; [6] and our eternal King, [7] who governs us by His Word and Spirit, and who defends and preserves us in the redemption obtained for us. [8]

#### **Psalm 45:7** [1]

7. You love righteousness and hate wickedness;  
therefore God, your God, has set you above your companions  
by anointing you with the oil of joy.

#### **Hebrews 1:9** [1]

9. You have loved righteousness and hated wickedness;  
therefore God, your God, has set you above your companions  
by anointing you with the oil of joy.”

#### **Isaiah 61:1** [1]

1. The Year of the Lord’s Favor  
The Spirit of the Sovereign Lord is on me,  
because the Lord has anointed me  
to preach good news to the poor.  
He has sent me to bind up the brokenhearted,  
to proclaim freedom for the captives  
and release from darkness for the prisoners,

#### **Luke 4:18** [1]

18. “The Spirit of the Lord is on me,  
because he has anointed me  
to preach good news to the poor.  
He has sent me to proclaim freedom for the prisoners  
and recovery of sight for the blind,  
to release the oppressed,

#### **Luke 3:21-22** [1]

21. The Baptism and Genealogy of Jesus  
When all the people were being baptized, Jesus was baptized too.  
And as he was praying, heaven was opened 22. and the Holy Spirit  
descended on him in bodily form like a dove. And a voice came  
from heaven: “You are my Son, whom I love; with you I am well  
pleased.”

#### **Deuteronomy 18:15** [2]

15. The Lord your God will raise up for you a prophet like me from  
among your own brothers. You must listen to him.

## Question 31

### Why is He called Christ, that is, Anointed?

Because He has been ordained by God the Father, and anointed with the Holy Spirit, [1] to be our chief Prophet and Teacher, [2] who has fully revealed to us the secret counsel and will of God concerning our redemption; [3] our only High Priest, [4] who by the one sacrifice of His body has redeemed us, [5] and who continually intercedes for us before the Father; [6] and our eternal King, [7] who governs us by His Word and Spirit, and who defends and preserves us in the redemption obtained for us. [8]

#### **Acts 3:22** [2]

22. For Moses said, 'The Lord your God will raise up for you a prophet like me from among your own people; you must listen to everything he tells you.

#### **John 1:18** [3]

18. No one has ever seen God, but God the One and Only, who is at the Father's side, has made him known.

#### **John 15:15** [3]

15. I no longer call you servants, because a servant does not know his master's business. Instead, I have called you friends, for everything that I learned from my Father I have made known to you.

#### **Psalms 110:4** [4]

4. The Lord has sworn and will not change his mind: "You are a priest forever, in the order of Melchizedek."

#### **Hebrews 7:17** [4]

17. For it is declared: "You are a priest forever, in the order of Melchizedek."

#### **Hebrews 9:12** [5]

12. He did not enter by means of the blood of goats and calves; but he entered the Most Holy Place once for all by his own blood, having obtained eternal redemption.

#### **Hebrews 10:11-14** [5]

11. Day after day every priest stands and performs his religious duties; again and again he offers the same sacrifices, which can never take away sins. 12. But when this priest had offered for all time one sacrifice for sins, he sat down at the right hand of God. 13. Since that time he waits for his enemies to be made his footstool, 14. because by one sacrifice he has made perfect forever those who are being made holy.



## Question 31

### Why is He called Christ, that is, Anointed?

Because He has been ordained by God the Father, and anointed with the Holy Spirit, [1] to be our chief Prophet and Teacher, [2] who has fully revealed to us the secret counsel and will of God concerning our redemption; [3] our only High Priest, [4] who by the one sacrifice of His body has redeemed us, [5] and who continually intercedes for us before the Father; [6] and our eternal King, [7] who governs us by His Word and Spirit, and who defends and preserves us in the redemption obtained for us. [8]

#### **Romans 8:34** [6]

34. Who is he that condemns? Christ Jesus, who died—more than that, who was raised to life—is at the right hand of God and is also interceding for us.

#### **Hebrews 9:24** [6]

24. For Christ did not enter a man-made sanctuary that was only a copy of the true one; he entered heaven itself, now to appear for us in God's presence.

#### **1 John 2:1** [6]

1. My dear children, I write this to you so that you will not sin. But if anybody does sin, we have one who speaks to the Father in our defense—Jesus Christ, the Righteous One.

#### **Zechariah 9:9** [7]

9. The Coming of Zion's King  
Rejoice greatly, O Daughter of Zion!  
Shout, Daughter of Jerusalem!  
See, your king comes to you,  
righteous and having salvation,  
gentle and riding on a donkey,  
on a colt, the foal of a donkey.

#### **Matthew 21:5** [7]

5. "Say to the Daughter of Zion,  
'See, your king comes to you,  
gentle and riding on a donkey,  
on a colt, the foal of a donkey.'"

#### **Luke 1:33** [7]

33. and he will reign over the house of Jacob forever; his kingdom will never end."

### Question 31

## Why is He called Christ, that is, Anointed?

Because He has been ordained by God the Father, and anointed with the Holy Spirit, [1] to be our chief Prophet and Teacher, [2] who has fully revealed to us the secret counsel and will of God concerning our redemption; [3] our only High Priest, [4] who by the one sacrifice of His body has redeemed us, [5] and who continually intercedes for us before the Father; [6] and our eternal King, [7] who governs us by His Word and Spirit, and who defends and preserves us in the redemption obtained for us. [8]

#### **Matthew 28:18-20** [8]

18. Then Jesus came to them and said, "All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. 19. Therefore go and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, 20. and teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you. And surely I am with you always, to the very end of the age."

#### **John 10:28** [8]

28. I give them eternal life, and they shall never perish; no one can snatch them out of my hand.

#### **Revelation 12:10-11** [8]

10. Then I heard a loud voice in heaven say:  
"Now have come the salvation and the power and the kingdom of our God,  
and the authority of his Christ.  
For the accuser of our brothers,  
who accuses them before our God day and night,  
has been hurled down. 11. They overcame him  
by the blood of the Lamb  
and by the word of their testimony;  
they did not love their lives so much  
as to shrink from death.

## Question 32

### Why are you called a Christian?

Because I am a member of Christ by faith [1] and thus share in His anointing, [2] so that I may as prophet confess His Name, [3]  
as priest present myself a living sacrifice of thankfulness to Him, [4]  
and as king fight with a free and good conscience against sin and the devil in this life, [5]  
and hereafter reign with Him eternally over all creatures. [6]

#### 1 Corinthians 12:12-27 [1]

#### Joel 2:28 [2]

28. The Day of the Lord

"And afterward,

I will pour out my Spirit on all people.

Your sons and daughters will prophesy,

your old men will dream dreams,

your young men will see visions.

#### Acts 2:17 [2]

17. "In the last days, God says,

I will pour out my Spirit on all people.

Your sons and daughters will prophesy,

your young men will see visions,

your old men will dream dreams.

#### 1 John 2:27 [2]

27. As for you, the anointing you received from him remains in you, and you do not need anyone to teach you. But as his anointing teaches you about all things and as that anointing is real, not counterfeit—just as it has taught you, remain in him.

## Question 32

### Why are you called a Christian?

Because I am a member of Christ by faith [1] and thus share in His anointing, [2] so that I may as prophet confess His Name, [3] as priest present myself a living sacrifice of thankfulness to Him, [4] and as king fight with a free and good conscience against sin and the devil in this life, [5] and hereafter reign with Him eternally over all creatures. [6]

#### **Matthew 10:32** [3]

32. "Whoever acknowledges me before men, I will also acknowledge him before my Father in heaven.

#### **Romans 10:9-10** [3]

9. That if you confess with your mouth, "Jesus is Lord," and believe in your heart that God raised him from the dead, you will be saved. 10. For it is with your heart that you believe and are justified, and it is with your mouth that you confess and are saved.

#### **Hebrews 13:15** [3]

15. Through Jesus, therefore, let us continually offer to God a sacrifice of praise—the fruit of lips that confess his name.

#### **Romans 12:1** [4]

##### 1. Living Sacrifices

Therefore, I urge you, brothers, in view of God's mercy, to offer your bodies as living sacrifices, holy and pleasing to God—this is your spiritual act of worship.

#### **1 Peter 2:5** [4]

5. you also, like living stones, are being built into a spiritual house to be a holy priesthood, offering spiritual sacrifices acceptable to God through Jesus Christ.

#### **1 Peter 2:9** [4]

9. But you are a chosen people, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people belonging to God, that you may declare the praises of him who called you out of darkness into his wonderful light.

#### **Galatians 5:16-17** [5]

##### 16. Life by the Spirit

So I say, live by the Spirit, and you will not gratify the desires of the sinful nature. 17. For the sinful nature desires what is contrary to the Spirit, and the Spirit what is contrary to the sinful nature. They are in conflict with each other, so that you do not do what you want.

#### **Ephesians 6:11** [5]

11. Put on the full armor of God so that you can take your stand against the devil's schemes.

## Question 32

### Why are you called a Christian?

Because I am a member of Christ by faith [1] and thus share in His anointing, [2] so that I may as prophet confess His Name, [3] as priest present myself a living sacrifice of thankfulness to Him, [4] and as king fight with a free and good conscience against sin and the devil in this life, [5] and hereafter reign with Him eternally over all creatures. [6]

#### **1 Timothy 1:18-19** [5]

18. Timothy, my son, I give you this instruction in keeping with the prophecies once made about you, so that by following them you may fight the good fight, 19. holding on to faith and a good conscience. Some have rejected these and so have shipwrecked their faith.

#### **Matthew 25:34** [6]

34. "Then the King will say to those on his right, 'Come, you who are blessed by my Father; take your inheritance, the kingdom prepared for you since the creation of the world.

#### **2 Timothy 2:12** [6]

12. if we endure,  
we will also reign with him.  
If we disown him,  
he will also disown us;

### Question 33

## Why is He called God's only begotten Son, since we also are children of God?

Because Christ alone is the eternal, natural Son of God. [1] We, however, are children of God by adoption, through grace, for Christ's sake. [2]

#### **John 1:1-3** [1]

##### **1.** The Word Became Flesh

In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. **2.** He was with God in the beginning. **3.** Through him all things were made; without him nothing was made that has been made.

#### **John 1:14** [1]

**14.** The Word became flesh and made his dwelling among us. We have seen his glory, the glory of the One and Only, who came from the Father, full of grace and truth.

#### **John 1:18** [1]

**18.** No one has ever seen God, but God the One and Only, who is at the Father's side, has made him known.

#### **John 3:16** [1]

**16.** "For God so loved the world that he gave his one and only Son, that whoever believes in him shall not perish but have eternal life.

#### **Romans 8:32** [1]

**32.** He who did not spare his own Son, but gave him up for us all—how will he not also, along with him, graciously give us all things?

#### **Hebrews 1** [1]

### Question 33

## Why is He called God's only begotten Son, since we also are children of God?

Because Christ alone is the eternal, natural Son of God. [1] We, however, are children of God by adoption, through grace, for Christ's sake. [2]

#### **1 John 4:9** [1]

9. This is how God showed his love among us: He sent his one and only Son into the world that we might live through him.

#### **John 1:12** [2]

12. Yet to all who received him, to those who believed in his name, he gave the right to become children of God—

#### **Romans 8:14-17** [2]

14. because those who are led by the Spirit of God are sons of God. 15. For you did not receive a spirit that makes you a slave again to fear, but you received the Spirit of sonship. And by him we cry, "Abba, Father." 16. The Spirit himself testifies with our spirit that we are God's children. 17. Now if we are children, then we are heirs—heirs of God and co-heirs with Christ, if indeed we share in his sufferings in order that we may also share in his glory.

#### **Galatians 4:6** [2]

6. Because you are sons, God sent the Spirit of his Son into our hearts, the Spirit who calls out, "Abba, Father."

#### **Ephesians 1:5-6** [2]

5. he predestined us to be adopted as his sons through Jesus Christ, in accordance with his pleasure and will— 6. to the praise of his glorious grace, which he has freely given us in the One he loves.

## Question 34

### Why do you call Him our Lord?

Because He has ransomed us, body and soul, [1] from all our sins, not with silver or gold but with His precious blood, [2] and has freed us from all the power of the devil to make us His own possession. [3]

#### **1 Corinthians 6:20** [1]

20. you were bought at a price. Therefore honor God with your body.

#### **1 Timothy 2:5-6** [1]

5. For there is one God and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus, 6. who gave himself as a ransom for all men—the testimony given in its proper time.

#### **1 Peter 1:18-19** [2]

18. For you know that it was not with perishable things such as silver or gold that you were redeemed from the empty way of life handed down to you from your forefathers, 19. but with the precious blood of Christ, a lamb without blemish or defect.

#### **Colossians 1:13-14** [3]

13. For he has rescued us from the dominion of darkness and brought us into the kingdom of the Son he loves, 14. in whom we have redemption, the forgiveness of sins.

#### **Hebrews 2:14-15** [3]

14. Since the children have flesh and blood, he too shared in their humanity so that by his death he might destroy him who holds the power of death—that is, the devil— 15. and free those who all their lives were held in slavery by their fear of death.



## Question 35

**What do you confess when you say:**

**He was conceived by the Holy Spirit, born of the virgin Mary?**

The eternal Son of God, who is and remains true and eternal God, [1] took upon Himself true human nature from the flesh and blood of the virgin Mary, [2] through the working of the Holy Spirit. [3] Thus He is also the true seed of David, [4] and like His brothers in every respect, [5] yet without sin. [6]

### **John 1:1** [1]

1. The Word Became Flesh

In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

### **John 10:30-36** [1]

30. I and the Father are one.” 31. Again the Jews picked up stones to stone him, 32. but Jesus said to them, “I have shown you many great miracles from the Father. For which of these do you stone me?” 33. “We are not stoning you for any of these,” replied the Jews, “but for blasphemy, because you, a mere man, claim to be God.” 34. Jesus answered them, “Is it not written in your Law, ‘I have said you are gods’? 35. If he called them ‘gods,’ to whom the word of God came—and the Scripture cannot be broken— 36. what about the one whom the Father set apart as his very own and sent into the world? Why then do you accuse me of blasphemy because I said, ‘I am God’s Son’?

### **Romans 1:3** [1]

3. regarding his Son, who as to his human nature was a descendant of David,

### **Romans 9:5** [1]

5. Theirs are the patriarchs, and from them is traced the human ancestry of Christ, who is God over all, forever praised! Amen.

### **Colossians 1:15-17** [1]

15. The Supremacy of Christ

He is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn over all creation. 16. For by him all things were created: things in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or powers or rulers or authorities; all things were created by him and for him. 17. He is before all things, and in him all things hold together.

### Question 35

**What do you confess when you say:**

**He was conceived by the Holy Spirit, born of the virgin Mary?**

The eternal Son of God, who is and remains true and eternal God, [1]  
took upon Himself true human nature from the flesh and blood of the virgin Mary, [2] through the working of the Holy Spirit. [3]  
Thus He is also the true seed of David, [4] and like His brothers in every respect, [5] yet without sin. [6]

#### **1 John 5:20 [1]**

**20.** We know also that the Son of God has come and has given us understanding, so that we may know him who is true. And we are in him who is true—even in his Son Jesus Christ. He is the true God and eternal life.

#### **Matthew 1:18-23 [2]**

##### **18.** The Birth of Jesus Christ

This is how the birth of Jesus Christ came about: His mother Mary was pledged to be married to Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be with child through the Holy Spirit.

**19.** Because Joseph her husband was a righteous man and did not want to expose her to public disgrace, he had in mind to divorce her quietly. **20.** But after he had considered this, an angel of the Lord appeared to him in a dream and said, “Joseph son of David, do not be afraid to take Mary home as your wife, because what is conceived in her is from the Holy Spirit. **21.** She will give birth to a son, and you are to give him the name Jesus, because he will save his people from their sins.” **22.** All this took place to fulfill what the Lord had said through the prophet: **23.** “The virgin will be with child and will give birth to a son, and they will call him Immanuel”—which means, “God with us.”

## Question 35

**What do you confess when you say:**

**He was conceived by the Holy Spirit, born of the virgin Mary?**

The eternal Son of God, who is and remains true and eternal God, [1]  
took upon Himself true human nature from the flesh and blood of the virgin Mary, [2] through the working of the Holy Spirit. [3]  
Thus He is also the true seed of David, [4] and like His brothers in every respect, [5] yet without sin. [6]

### **John 1:14** [2]

14. The Word became flesh and made his dwelling among us. We have seen his glory, the glory of the One and Only, who came from the Father, full of grace and truth.

### **Galatians 4:4** [2]

4. But when the time had fully come, God sent his Son, born of a woman, born under law,

### **Hebrews 2:14** [2]

14. Since the children have flesh and blood, he too shared in their humanity so that by his death he might destroy him who holds the power of death—that is, the devil—

### **Luke 1:35** [3]

35. The angel answered, “The Holy Spirit will come upon you, and the power of the Most High will overshadow you. So the holy one to be born will be called the Son of God.

### **2 Samuel 7:12-16** [4]

12. When your days are over and you rest with your fathers, I will raise up your offspring to succeed you, who will come from your own body, and I will establish his kingdom. 13. He is the one who will build a house for my Name, and I will establish the throne of his kingdom forever. 14. I will be his father, and he will be my son. When he does wrong, I will punish him with the rod of men, with floggings inflicted by men. 15. But my love will never be taken away from him, as I took it away from Saul, whom I removed from before you. 16. Your house and your kingdom will endure forever before me; your throne will be established forever.”

### **Psalms 132:11** [4]

11. The Lord swore an oath to David,  
a sure oath that he will not revoke:  
“One of your own descendants  
I will place on your throne—

## Question 35

### What do you confess when you say:

### He was conceived by the Holy Spirit, born of the virgin Mary?

The eternal Son of God, who is and remains true and eternal God, [1]  
took upon Himself true human nature from the flesh and blood of the virgin Mary, [2] through the working of the Holy Spirit. [3]  
Thus He is also the true seed of David, [4] and like His brothers in every respect, [5] yet without sin. [6]

#### **Matthew 1:1** [4]

1. The Genealogy of Jesus

A record of the genealogy of Jesus Christ the son of David, the son of Abraham:

#### **Luke 1:32** [4]

32. He will be great and will be called the Son of the Most High. The Lord God will give him the throne of his father David,

#### **Romans 1:3** [4]

3. regarding his Son, who as to his human nature was a descendant of David,

#### **Philippians 2:7** [5]

7. but made himself nothing,  
taking the very nature of a servant,  
being made in human likeness.

#### **Hebrews 2:17** [5]

17. For this reason he had to be made like his brothers in every way, in order that he might become a merciful and faithful high priest in service to God, and that he might make atonement for the sins of the people.

#### **Hebrews 4:15** [6]

15. For we do not have a high priest who is unable to sympathize with our weaknesses, but we have one who has been tempted in every way, just as we are—yet was without sin.

#### **Hebrews 7:26-27** [6]

26. Such a high priest meets our need—one who is holy, blameless, pure, set apart from sinners, exalted above the heavens. 27. Unlike the other high priests, he does not need to offer sacrifices day after day, first for his own sins, and then for the sins of the people. He sacrificed for their sins once for all when he offered himself.

## Question 36

### What benefit do you receive from the holy conception and birth of Christ?

He is our Mediator, [1] and with His innocence and perfect holiness covers, in the sight of God, my sin, in which I was conceived and born. [2]

#### **1 Timothy 2:5, 6** [1]

5. For there is one God and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus, 6. who gave himself as a ransom for all men—the testimony given in its proper time.

#### **Hebrews 9:13-15** [1]

13. The blood of goats and bulls and the ashes of a heifer sprinkled on those who are ceremonially unclean sanctify them so that they are outwardly clean. 14. How much more, then, will the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself unblemished to God, cleanse our consciences from acts that lead to death, so that we may serve the living God! 15. For this reason Christ is the mediator of a new covenant, that those who are called may receive the promised eternal inheritance—now that he has died as a ransom to set them free from the sins committed under the first covenant.

#### **Romans 8:3-4** [2]

3. For what the law was powerless to do in that it was weakened by the sinful nature, God did by sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful man to be a sin offering. And so he condemned sin in sinful man, 4. in order that the righteous requirements of the law might be fully met in us, who do not live according to the sinful nature but according to the Spirit.

#### **2 Corinthians 5:21** [2]

21. God made him who had no sin to be sin for us, so that in him we might become the righteousness of God.

#### **Galatians 4:4-5** [2]

4. But when the time had fully come, God sent his Son, born of a woman, born under law, 5. to redeem those under law, that we might receive the full rights of sons.

#### **1 Peter 1:18-19** [2]

18. For you know that it was not with perishable things such as silver or gold that you were redeemed from the empty way of life handed down to you from your forefathers, 19. but with the precious blood of Christ, a lamb without blemish or defect.

### Question 37

## What do you confess when you say that He suffered?

During all the time He lived on earth, but especially at the end, Christ bore in body and soul the wrath of God against the sin of the whole human race. [1]

Thus, by His suffering, as the only atoning sacrifice, [2] He has redeemed our body and soul from everlasting damnation, [3] and obtained for us the grace of God, righteousness, and eternal life. [4]

#### **Isaiah 53** [1]

#### **1 Timothy 2:6** [1]

6. who gave himself as a ransom for all men—the testimony given in its proper time.

#### **1 Peter 2:24** [1]

24. He himself bore our sins in his body on the tree, so that we might die to sins and live for righteousness; by his wounds you have been healed.

#### **1 Peter 3:18** [1]

18. For Christ died for sins once for all, the righteous for the unrighteous, to bring you to God. He was put to death in the body but made alive by the Spirit,

#### **Romans 3:25** [2]

25. God presented him as a sacrifice of atonement, through faith in his blood. He did this to demonstrate his justice, because in his forbearance he had left the sins committed beforehand unpunished—

## Question 37

### What do you confess when you say that He suffered?

During all the time He lived on earth, but especially at the end, Christ bore in body and soul the wrath of God against the sin of the whole human race. [1]

Thus, by His suffering, as the only atoning sacrifice, [2] He has redeemed our body and soul from everlasting damnation, [3] and obtained for us the grace of God, righteousness, and eternal life. [4]

#### **1 Corinthians 5:7** [2]

7. Get rid of the old yeast that you may be a new batch without yeast—as you really are. For Christ, our Passover lamb, has been sacrificed.

#### **Ephesians 5:2** [2]

2. and live a life of love, just as Christ loved us and gave himself up for us as a fragrant offering and sacrifice to God.

#### **Hebrews 10:14** [2]

14. because by one sacrifice he has made perfect forever those who are being made holy.

#### **1 John 2:2** [2]

2. He is the atoning sacrifice for our sins, and not only for ours but also for the sins of the whole world.

#### **1 John 4:10** [2]

10. This is love: not that we loved God, but that he loved us and sent his Son as an atoning sacrifice for our sins.

#### **Romans 8:1-4** [3]

##### 1. Life Through the Spirit

Therefore, there is now no condemnation for those who are in Christ Jesus, 2. because through Christ Jesus the law of the Spirit of life set me free from the law of sin and death. 3. For what the law was powerless to do in that it was weakened by the sinful nature, God did by sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful man to be a sin offering. And so he condemned sin in sinful man, 4. in order that the righteous requirements of the law might be fully met in us, who do not live according to the sinful nature but according to the Spirit.

#### **Galatians 3:13** [3]

13. Christ redeemed us from the curse of the law by becoming a curse for us, for it is written: "Cursed is everyone who is hung on a tree."

#### **Colossians 1:13** [3]

13. For he has rescued us from the dominion of darkness and brought us into the kingdom of the Son he loves,

### Question 37

## What do you confess when you say that He suffered?

During all the time He lived on earth, but especially at the end, Christ bore in body and soul the wrath of God against the sin of the whole human race. [1]

Thus, by His suffering, as the only atoning sacrifice, [2] He has redeemed our body and soul from everlasting damnation, [3] and obtained for us the grace of God, righteousness, and eternal life. [4]

#### **Hebrews 9:12** [3]

12. He did not enter by means of the blood of goats and calves; but he entered the Most Holy Place once for all by his own blood, having obtained eternal redemption.

#### **1 Peter 1:18-19** [3]

18. For you know that it was not with perishable things such as silver or gold that you were redeemed from the empty way of life handed down to you from your forefathers, 19. but with the precious blood of Christ, a lamb without blemish or defect.

#### **John 3:16** [4]

16. "For God so loved the world that he gave his one and only Son, that whoever believes in him shall not perish but have eternal life.

#### **Romans 3:24-26** [4]

24. and are justified freely by his grace through the redemption that came by Christ Jesus. 25. God presented him as a sacrifice of atonement, through faith in his blood. He did this to demonstrate his justice, because in his forbearance he had left the sins committed beforehand unpunished— 26. he did it to demonstrate his justice at the present time, so as to be just and the one who justifies those who have faith in Jesus.

#### **2 Corinthians 5:21** [4]

21. God made him who had no sin to be sin for us, so that in him we might become the righteousness of God.

#### **Hebrews 9:15** [4]

15. For this reason Christ is the mediator of a new covenant, that those who are called may receive the promised eternal inheritance—now that he has died as a ransom to set them free from the sins committed under the first covenant.



## Question 38

### Why did He suffer under Pontius Pilate as judge?

Though innocent, Christ was condemned by an earthly judge, [1]  
and so He freed us from the severe judgment of God that was to fall on us. [2]

#### **Luke 23:13-24** [1]

**13.** Pilate called together the chief priests, the rulers and the people, **14.** and said to them, "You brought me this man as one who was inciting the people to rebellion. I have examined him in your presence and have found no basis for your charges against him. **15.** Neither has Herod, for he sent him back to us; as you can see, he has done nothing to deserve death. **16.** Therefore, I will punish him and then release him." **18.** With one voice they cried out, "Away with this man! Release Barabbas to us!" **19.** (Barabbas had been thrown into prison for an insurrection in the city, and for murder.) **20.** Wanting to release Jesus, Pilate appealed to them again. **21.** But they kept shouting, "Crucify him! Crucify him!" **22.** For the third time he spoke to them: "Why? What crime has this man committed? I have found in him no grounds for the death penalty. Therefore I will have him punished and then release him." **23.** But with loud shouts they insistently demanded that he be crucified, and their shouts prevailed. **24.** So Pilate decided to grant their demand.

#### **John 19:4** [1]

**4.** Once more Pilate came out and said to the Jews, "Look, I am bringing him out to you to let you know that I find no basis for a charge against him."

#### **John 19:12-16** [1]

**12.** From then on, Pilate tried to set Jesus free, but the Jews kept shouting, "If you let this man go, you are no friend of Caesar. Anyone who claims to be a king opposes Caesar." **13.** When Pilate heard this, he brought Jesus out and sat down on the judge's seat at a place known as the Stone Pavement (which in Aramaic is Gabbatha). **14.** It was the day of Preparation of Passover Week, about the sixth hour. "Here is your king," Pilate said to the Jews. **15.** But they shouted, "Take him away! Take him away! Crucify him!" "Shall I crucify your king?" Pilate asked. "We have no king but Caesar," the chief priests answered. **16.** Finally Pilate handed him over to them to be crucified.  
The Crucifixion  
So the soldiers took charge of Jesus.

### Question 38

## Why did He suffer under Pontius Pilate as judge?

Though innocent, Christ was condemned by an earthly judge, [1]  
and so He freed us from the severe judgment of God that was to fall on us. [2]

### **Isaiah 53:4-5** [2]

4. Surely he took up our infirmities  
and carried our sorrows,  
yet we considered him stricken by God,  
smitten by him, and afflicted. 5. But he was pierced for our  
transgressions,  
he was crushed for our iniquities;  
the punishment that brought us peace was upon him,  
and by his wounds we are healed.

### **2 Corinthians 5:21** [2]

21. God made him who had no sin to be sin for us, so that in him we  
might become the righteousness of God.

### **Galatians 3:13** [2]

13. Christ redeemed us from the curse of the law by becoming a  
curse for us, for it is written: "Cursed is everyone who is hung on a  
tree."

### Question 39

## **Does it have a special meaning that Christ was crucified and did not die in a different way?**

Yes. Thereby I am assured that He took upon Himself the curse which lay on me, for a crucified one was cursed by God. [1]

### **Deuteronomy 21:23** [1]

23. you must not leave his body on the tree overnight. Be sure to bury him that same day, because anyone who is hung on a tree is under God's curse. You must not desecrate the land the Lord your God is giving you as an inheritance.

### **Galatians 3:13** [1]

13. Christ redeemed us from the curse of the law by becoming a curse for us, for it is written: "Cursed is everyone who is hung on a tree."

## Question 40

### Why was it necessary for Christ to humble Himself even unto death?

Because of the justice and truth of God [1] satisfaction for our sins could be made in no other way than by the death of the Son of God. [2]

#### **Genesis 2:17** [1]

17. but you must not eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, for when you eat of it you will surely die.”

#### **Romans 8:3** [2]

3. For what the law was powerless to do in that it was weakened by the sinful nature, God did by sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful man to be a sin offering. And so he condemned sin in sinful man,

#### **Philippians 2:8** [2]

8. And being found in appearance as a man,  
he humbled himself  
and became obedient to death—  
even death on a cross!

#### **Hebrews 2:9** [2]

9. But we see Jesus, who was made a little lower than the angels, now crowned with glory and honor because he suffered death, so that by the grace of God he might taste death for everyone.

#### **Hebrews 2:14** [2]

14. Since the children have flesh and blood, he too shared in their humanity so that by his death he might destroy him who holds the power of death—that is, the devil—

#### **Hebrews 2:15** [2]

15. and free those who all their lives were held in slavery by their fear of death.

## Question 41

### Why was he buried?

His burial testified that He had really died. [1]

#### **Isaiah 53:9** [1]

9. He was assigned a grave with the wicked,  
and with the rich in his death,  
though he had done no violence,  
nor was any deceit in his mouth.

#### **John 19:38-42** [1]

##### **38. The Burial of Jesus**

Later, Joseph of Arimathea asked Pilate for the body of Jesus. Now Joseph was a disciple of Jesus, but secretly because he feared the Jews. With Pilate's permission, he came and took the body away. **39.** He was accompanied by Nicodemus, the man who earlier had visited Jesus at night. Nicodemus brought a mixture of myrrh and aloes, about seventy-five pounds. **40.** Taking Jesus' body, the two of them wrapped it, with the spices, in strips of linen. This was in accordance with Jewish burial customs. **41.** At the place where Jesus was crucified, there was a garden, and in the garden a new tomb, in which no one had ever been laid. **42.** Because it was the Jewish day of Preparation and since the tomb was nearby, they laid Jesus there.

#### **Acts 13:29** [1]

**29.** When they had carried out all that was written about him, they took him down from the tree and laid him in a tomb.

#### **1 Corinthians 15:3-4** [1]

**3.** For what I received I passed on to you as of first importance: that Christ died for our sins according to the Scriptures, **4.** that he was buried, that he was raised on the third day according to the Scriptures,

## Question 42

### Since Christ has died for us, why do we still have to die?

Our death is not a payment for our sins, but it puts an end to sin and is an entrance into eternal life. [1]

#### **John 5:24** [1]

24. "I tell you the truth, whoever hears my word and believes him who sent me has eternal life and will not be condemned; he has crossed over from death to life.

#### **Philippians 1:21-23** [1]

21. For to me, to live is Christ and to die is gain. 22. If I am to go on living in the body, this will mean fruitful labor for me. Yet what shall I choose? I do not know! 23. I am torn between the two: I desire to depart and be with Christ, which is better by far;

#### **1 Thessalonians 5:9-10** [1]

9. For God did not appoint us to suffer wrath but to receive salvation through our Lord Jesus Christ. 10. He died for us so that, whether we are awake or asleep, we may live together with him.

### Question 43

## What further benefit do we receive from Christ's sacrifice and death on the cross?

Through Christ's death our old nature is crucified, put to death, and buried with Him, [1] so that the evil desires of the flesh may no longer reign in us, [2] but that we may offer ourselves to Him as a sacrifice of thankfulness. [3]

### **Romans 6:5-11** [1]

5. If we have been united with him like this in his death, we will certainly also be united with him in his resurrection. 6. For we know that our old self was crucified with him so that the body of sin might be done away with, that we should no longer be slaves to sin— 7. because anyone who has died has been freed from sin. 8. Now if we died with Christ, we believe that we will also live with him. 9. For we know that since Christ was raised from the dead, he cannot die again; death no longer has mastery over him. 10. The death he died, he died to sin once for all; but the life he lives, he lives to God. 11. In the same way, count yourselves dead to sin but alive to God in Christ Jesus.

### **Colossians 2:11-12** [1]

11. In him you were also circumcised, in the putting off of the sinful nature, not with a circumcision done by the hands of men but with the circumcision done by Christ, 12. having been buried with him in baptism and raised with him through your faith in the power of God, who raised him from the dead.

### **Romans 6:12-14** [2]

12. Therefore do not let sin reign in your mortal body so that you obey its evil desires. 13. Do not offer the parts of your body to sin, as instruments of wickedness, but rather offer yourselves to God, as those who have been brought from death to life; and offer the parts of your body to him as instruments of righteousness. 14. For sin shall not be your master, because you are not under law, but under grace.

### **Romans 12:1** [3]

#### 1. Living Sacrifices

Therefore, I urge you, brothers, in view of God's mercy, to offer your bodies as living sacrifices, holy and pleasing to God—this is your spiritual act of worship.

### **Ephesians 5:1-2** [3]

1. Be imitators of God, therefore, as dearly loved children 2. and live a life of love, just as Christ loved us and gave himself up for us as a fragrant offering and sacrifice to God.

## Question 44

### Why is there added: He descended into hell?

In my greatest sorrows and temptations I may be assured and comforted that my Lord Jesus Christ, by His unspeakable anguish, pain, terror, and agony, which He endured throughout all His sufferings [1]  
but especially on the cross, has delivered me from the anguish and torment of hell. [2]

#### **Psalm 18:5-6** [1]

**5.** The cords of the grave coiled around me;  
the snares of death confronted me. **6.** In my distress I called to the Lord;  
I cried to my God for help.  
From his temple he heard my voice;  
my cry came before him, into his ears.

#### **Psalm 116:3** [1]

**3.** The cords of death entangled me,  
the anguish of the grave came upon me;  
I was overcome by trouble and sorrow.

#### **Matthew 26:36-46** [1]

##### **36.** Gethsemane

Then Jesus went with his disciples to a place called Gethsemane, and he said to them, "Sit here while I go over there and pray." **37.** He took Peter and the two sons of Zebedee along with him, and he began to be sorrowful and troubled. **38.** Then he said to them, "My soul is overwhelmed with sorrow to the point of death. Stay here and keep watch with me." **39.** Going a little farther, he fell with his face to the ground and prayed, "My Father, if it is possible, may this cup be taken from me. Yet not as I will, but as you will." **40.** Then he returned to his disciples and found them sleeping. "Could you men not keep watch with me for one hour?" he asked Peter. **41.** "Watch and pray so that you will not fall into temptation. The spirit is willing, but the body is weak." **42.** He went away a second time and prayed, "My Father, if it is not possible for this cup to be taken away unless I drink it, may your will be done." **43.** When he came back, he again found them sleeping, because their eyes were heavy. **44.** So he left them and went away once more and prayed the third time, saying the same thing. **45.** Then he returned to the disciples and said to them, "Are you still sleeping and resting? Look, the hour is near, and the Son of Man is betrayed into the hands of sinners. **46.** Rise, let us go! Here comes my betrayer!"



## Question 44

### Why is there added: He descended into hell?

In my greatest sorrows and temptations I may be assured and comforted that my Lord Jesus Christ, by His unspeakable anguish, pain, terror, and agony, which He endured throughout all His sufferings [1]  
but especially on the cross, has delivered me from the anguish and torment of hell. [2]

#### **Matthew 27:45-46** [1]

##### **45.** The Death of Jesus

From the sixth hour until the ninth hour darkness came over all the land. **46.** About the ninth hour Jesus cried out in a loud voice, “Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani?”—which means, “My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?”

#### **Isaiah 53** [2]

#### **Hebrews 5:7-10** [1]

**7.** During the days of Jesus’ life on earth, he offered up prayers and petitions with loud cries and tears to the one who could save him from death, and he was heard because of his reverent submission. **8.** Although he was a son, he learned obedience from what he suffered **9.** and, once made perfect, he became the source of eternal salvation for all who obey him **10.** and was designated by God to be high priest in the order of Melchizedek.

## Question 45

### How does Christ's resurrection benefit us?

First, by His resurrection He has overcome death, so that He could make us share in the righteousness which He had obtained for us by His death. [1]

Second, by His power we too are raised up to a new life. [2] Third, Christ's resurrection is to us a sure pledge of our glorious resurrection. [3]

#### **Romans 4:25** [1]

**25.** He was delivered over to death for our sins and was raised to life for our justification.

#### **1 Corinthians 15:16-20** [1]

**16.** For if the dead are not raised, then Christ has not been raised either. **17.** And if Christ has not been raised, your faith is futile; you are still in your sins. **18.** Then those also who have fallen asleep in Christ are lost. **19.** If only for this life we have hope in Christ, we are to be pitied more than all men. **20.** But Christ has indeed been raised from the dead, the firstfruits of those who have fallen asleep.

#### **1 Peter 1:3-5** [1]

**3.** Praise to God for a Living Hope

Praise be to the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ! In his great mercy he has given us new birth into a living hope through the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead, **4.** and into an inheritance that can never perish, spoil or fade—kept in heaven for you, **5.** who through faith are shielded by God's power until the coming of the salvation that is ready to be revealed in the last time.

#### **Romans 6:5-11** [2]

**5.** If we have been united with him like this in his death, we will certainly also be united with him in his resurrection. **6.** For we know that our old self was crucified with him so that the body of sin might be done away with, that we should no longer be slaves to sin— **7.** because anyone who has died has been freed from sin. **8.** Now if we died with Christ, we believe that we will also live with him. **9.** For we know that since Christ was raised from the dead, he cannot die again; death no longer has mastery over him. **10.** The death he died, he died to sin once for all; but the life he lives, he lives to God. **11.** In the same way, count yourselves dead to sin but alive to God in Christ Jesus.

#### **Ephesians 2:4-6** [2]

**4.** But because of his great love for us, God, who is rich in mercy, **5.** made us alive with Christ even when we were dead in transgressions—it is by grace you have been saved. **6.** And God raised us up with Christ and seated us with him in the heavenly realms in Christ Jesus,

## Question 45

### How does Christ's resurrection benefit us?

First, by His resurrection He has overcome death, so that He could make us share in the righteousness which He had obtained for us by His death. [1]

Second, by His power we too are raised up to a new life. [2] Third, Christ's resurrection is to us a sure pledge of our glorious resurrection. [3]

#### **Colossians 3:1-4** [2]

##### **1. Rules for Holy Living**

Since, then, you have been raised with Christ, set your hearts on things above, where Christ is seated at the right hand of God. **2.** Set your minds on things above, not on earthly things. **3.** For you died, and your life is now hidden with Christ in God. **4.** When Christ, who is your life, appears, then you also will appear with him in glory.

#### **Romans 8:11** [3]

**11.** And if the Spirit of him who raised Jesus from the dead is living in you, he who raised Christ from the dead will also give life to your mortal bodies through his Spirit, who lives in you.

#### **1 Corinthians 15:12-23** [3]

##### **12. The Resurrection of the Dead**

But if it is preached that Christ has been raised from the dead, how can some of you say that there is no resurrection of the dead? **13.** If there is no resurrection of the dead, then not even Christ has been raised. **14.** And if Christ has not been raised, our preaching is useless and so is your faith. **15.** More than that, we are then found to be false witnesses about God, for we have testified about God that he raised Christ from the dead. But he did not raise him if in fact the dead are not raised. **16.** For if the dead are not raised, then Christ has not been raised either. **17.** And if Christ has not been raised, your faith is futile; you are still in your sins. **18.** Then those also who have fallen asleep in Christ are lost. **19.** If only for this life we have hope in Christ, we are to be pitied more than all men. **20.** But Christ has indeed been raised from the dead, the firstfruits of those who have fallen asleep. **21.** For since death came through a man, the resurrection of the dead comes also through a man. **22.** For as in Adam all die, so in Christ all will be made alive. **23.** But each in his own turn: Christ, the firstfruits; then, when he comes, those who belong to him.

## Question 45

### How does Christ's resurrection benefit us?

First, by His resurrection He has overcome death, so that He could make us share in the righteousness which He had obtained for us by His death. [1]

Second, by His power we too are raised up to a new life. [2] Third, Christ's resurrection is to us a sure pledge of our glorious resurrection. [3]

#### **Philippians 3:20-21** [3]

20. But our citizenship is in heaven. And we eagerly await a Savior from there, the Lord Jesus Christ, 21. who, by the power that enables him to bring everything under his control, will transform our lowly bodies so that they will be like his glorious body.

## Question 46

### What do you confess when you say, He ascended into heaven?

That Christ, before the eyes of His disciples, was taken up from the earth into heaven, [1] and that He is there for our benefit [2] until He comes again to judge the living and the dead. [3]

#### **Mark 16:19** [1]

19. After the Lord Jesus had spoken to them, he was taken up into heaven and he sat at the right hand of God.

#### **Luke 24:50, 51** [1]

50. The Ascension

When he had led them out to the vicinity of Bethany, he lifted up his hands and blessed them. 51. While he was blessing them, he left them and was taken up into heaven.

#### **Acts 1:9-11** [1]

9. After he said this, he was taken up before their very eyes, and a cloud hid him from their sight. 10. They were looking intently up into the sky as he was going, when suddenly two men dressed in white stood beside them. 11. "Men of Galilee," they said, "why do you stand here looking into the sky? This same Jesus, who has been taken from you into heaven, will come back in the same way you have seen him go into heaven."

#### **Romans 8:34** [2]

34. Who is he that condemns? Christ Jesus, who died—more than that, who was raised to life—is at the right hand of God and is also interceding for us.

#### **Hebrews 4:14** [2]

14. Jesus the Great High Priest

Therefore, since we have a great high priest who has gone through the heavens, Jesus the Son of God, let us hold firmly to the faith we profess.

#### **Hebrews 7:23-25** [2]

23. Now there have been many of those priests, since death prevented them from continuing in office; 24. but because Jesus lives forever, he has a permanent priesthood. 25. Therefore he is able to save completely those who come to God through him, because he always lives to intercede for them.

#### **Hebrews 9:24** [2]

24. For Christ did not enter a man-made sanctuary that was only a copy of the true one; he entered heaven itself, now to appear for us in God's presence.

#### **Matthew 24:30** [3]

30. "At that time the sign of the Son of Man will appear in the sky, and all the nations of the earth will mourn. They will see the Son of Man coming on the clouds of the sky, with power and great glory.

### Question 46

## **What do you confess when you say, He ascended into heaven?**

That Christ, before the eyes of His disciples, was taken up from the earth into heaven, [1] and that He is there for our benefit [2] until He comes again to judge the living and the dead. [3]

### **Acts 1:11**[3]

11. "Men of Galilee," they said, "why do you stand here looking into the sky? This same Jesus, who has been taken from you into heaven, will come back in the same way you have seen him go into heaven."

## Question 47

### Is Christ, then, not with us until the end of the world, as He has promised us?

Christ is true man and true God. With respect to His human nature He is no longer on earth, [1]  
but with respect to His divinity, majesty, grace, and Spirit He is never absent from us. [2]

#### **Matthew 28:20** [1]

20. and teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you. And surely I am with you always, to the very end of the age.”

#### **Matthew 26:11** [2]

11. The poor you will always have with you, but you will not always have me.

#### **John 16:28** [2]

28. I came from the Father and entered the world; now I am leaving the world and going back to the Father.”

#### **John 17:11** [2]

11. I will remain in the world no longer, but they are still in the world, and I am coming to you. Holy Father, protect them by the power of your name—the name you gave me—so that they may be one as we are one.

#### **Acts 3:19-21** [2]

19. Repent, then, and turn to God, so that your sins may be wiped out, that times of refreshing may come from the Lord, 20. and that he may send the Christ, who has been appointed for you—even Jesus. 21. He must remain in heaven until the time comes for God to restore everything, as he promised long ago through his holy prophets.

#### **Hebrews 8:4** [2]

4. If he were on earth, he would not be a priest, for there are already men who offer the gifts prescribed by the law.

#### **Matthew 28:18-20** [3]

18. Then Jesus came to them and said, “All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. 19. Therefore go and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, 20. and teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you. And surely I am with you always, to the very end of the age.”

### Question 47

## **Is Christ, then, not with us until the end of the world, as He has promised us?**

Christ is true man and true God. With respect to His human nature He is no longer on earth, [1]  
but with respect to His divinity, majesty, grace, and Spirit He is never absent from us. [2]

### **John 14:16-19** [3]

**16.** And I will ask the Father, and he will give you another Counselor to be with you forever— **17.** the Spirit of truth. The world cannot accept him, because it neither sees him nor knows him. But you know him, for he lives with you and will be in you. **18.** I will not leave you as orphans; I will come to you. **19.** Before long, the world will not see me anymore, but you will see me. Because I live, you also will live.

### **John 16:13** [3]

**13.** But when he, the Spirit of truth, comes, he will guide you into all truth. He will not speak on his own; he will speak only what he hears, and he will tell you what is yet to come.



## Question 48

### **But are the two natures in Christ not separated from each other if His human nature is not present wherever His divinity is?**

Not at all, for His divinity has no limits and is present everywhere. [1]

So it must follow that His divinity is indeed beyond the human nature which He has taken on and nevertheless is within this human nature and remains personally united with it. [2]

#### **Jeremiah 23:23-24** [1]

23. "Am I only a God nearby,"  
declares the Lord,  
"and not a God far away? 24. Can anyone hide in secret places  
so that I cannot see him?"  
declares the Lord.  
"Do not I fill heaven and earth?"  
declares the Lord.

#### **Acts 7:48-49** [1]

48. "However, the Most High does not live in houses made by men.  
As the prophet says: 49. "Heaven is my throne,  
and the earth is my footstool.  
What kind of house will you build for me?  
says the Lord.  
Or where will my resting place be?

#### **John 1:14** [2]

14. The Word became flesh and made his dwelling among us. We  
have seen his glory, the glory of the One and Only, who came from  
the Father, full of grace and truth.

#### **John 3:13** [2]

13. No one has ever gone into heaven except the one who came  
from heaven—the Son of Man.

#### **Colossians 2:9** [2]

9. For in Christ all the fullness of the Deity lives in bodily form,

## Question 49

### How does Christ's ascension into heaven benefit us?

First, He is our Advocate in heaven before His Father. [1]

Second, we have our flesh in heaven as a sure pledge that He, our Head, will also take us, His members, up to Himself. [2]

Third, He sends us His Spirit as a counter-pledge, [3]

by whose power we seek the things that are above, where Christ is, seated at the right hand of God, and not the things that are on earth. [4]

#### **Romans 8:34** [1]

34. Who is he that condemns? Christ Jesus, who died—more than that, who was raised to life—is at the right hand of God and is also interceding for us.

#### **1 John 2:1** [1]

1. My dear children, I write this to you so that you will not sin. But if anybody does sin, we have one who speaks to the Father in our defense—Jesus Christ, the Righteous One.

#### **John 14:2** [2]

2. In my Father's house are many rooms; if it were not so, I would have told you. I am going there to prepare a place for you.

#### **John 17:24** [2]

24. "Father, I want those you have given me to be with me where I am, and to see my glory, the glory you have given me because you loved me before the creation of the world.

#### **Ephesians 2:4-6** [2]

4. But because of his great love for us, God, who is rich in mercy, 5. made us alive with Christ even when we were dead in transgressions—it is by grace you have been saved. 6. And God raised us up with Christ and seated us with him in the heavenly realms in Christ Jesus,

#### **John 14:16** [3]

16. And I will ask the Father, and he will give you another Counselor to be with you forever—

#### **Acts 2:33** [3]

33. Exalted to the right hand of God, he has received from the Father the promised Holy Spirit and has poured out what you now see and hear.

#### **2 Corinthians 1:21-22** [3]

21. Now it is God who makes both us and you stand firm in Christ. He anointed us, 22. set his seal of ownership on us, and put his Spirit in our hearts as a deposit, guaranteeing what is to come.

## Question 49

### How does Christ's ascension into heaven benefit us?

First, He is our Advocate in heaven before His Father. [1]

Second, we have our flesh in heaven as a sure pledge that He, our Head, will also take us, His members, up to Himself. [2]

Third, He sends us His Spirit as a counter-pledge, [3]

by whose power we seek the things that are above, where Christ is, seated at the right hand of God, and not the things that are on earth. [4]

#### **2 Corinthians 5:5** [3]

5. Now it is God who has made us for this very purpose and has given us the Spirit as a deposit, guaranteeing what is to come.

#### **Colossians 3:1-4** [4]

##### 1. Rules for Holy Living

Since, then, you have been raised with Christ, set your hearts on things above, where Christ is seated at the right hand of God. 2.

Set your minds on things above, not on earthly things. 3. For you

died, and your life is now hidden with Christ in God. 4. When

Christ, who is your life, appears, then you also will appear with him in glory.

## Question 50

# Why is it added, And sits at the right hand of God?

Christ ascended into heaven to manifest Himself there as Head of His Church, [1] through whom the Father governs all things. [2]

### **Ephesians 1:20-23** [1]

20. which he exerted in Christ when he raised him from the dead and seated him at his right hand in the heavenly realms, 21. far above all rule and authority, power and dominion, and every title that can be given, not only in the present age but also in the one to come. 22. And God placed all things under his feet and appointed him to be head over everything for the church, 23. which is his body, the fullness of him who fills everything in every way.

### **Colossians 1:18** [1]

18. And he is the head of the body, the church; he is the beginning and the firstborn from among the dead, so that in everything he might have the supremacy.

### **Matthew 28:18** [2]

18. Then Jesus came to them and said, "All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me.

### **John 5:22-23** [2]

22. Moreover, the Father judges no one, but has entrusted all judgment to the Son, 23. that all may honor the Son just as they honor the Father. He who does not honor the Son does not honor the Father, who sent him.

## Question 51

### How does the glory of Christ, our Head, benefit us?

First, by His Holy Spirit He pours out heavenly gifts upon us, His members. [1]

Second, by His power He defends and preserves us against all enemies. [2]

#### **Acts 2:33** [1]

**33.** Exalted to the right hand of God, he has received from the Father the promised Holy Spirit and has poured out what you now see and hear.

#### **Ephesians 4:7-12** [1]

**7.** But to each one of us grace has been given as Christ apportioned it. **8.** This is why it says: "When he ascended on high, he led captives in his train and gave gifts to men." **9.** (What does "he ascended" mean except that he also descended to the lower, earthly regions? **10.** He who descended is the very one who ascended higher than all the heavens, in order to fill the whole universe.) **11.** It was he who gave some to be apostles, some to be prophets, some to be evangelists, and some to be pastors and teachers, **12.** to prepare God's people for works of service, so that the body of Christ may be built up

#### **Psalms 2:9** [2]

**9.** You will rule them with an iron scepter; you will dash them to pieces like pottery."

#### **Psalms 110:1-2** [2]

**1.** Psalm 110  
Of David. A psalm.  
The Lord says to my Lord:  
"Sit at my right hand  
until I make your enemies  
a footstool for your feet." **2.** The Lord will extend your mighty  
scepter from Zion;  
you will rule in the midst of your enemies.

#### **John 10:27-30** [2]

**27.** My sheep listen to my voice; I know them, and they follow me.  
**28.** I give them eternal life, and they shall never perish; no one can snatch them out of my hand. **29.** My Father, who has given them to me, is greater than all; no one can snatch them out of my Father's hand. **30.** I and the Father are one."

## Question 51

### How does the glory of Christ, our Head, benefit us?

First, by His Holy Spirit He pours out heavenly gifts upon us, His members. [1]

Second, by His power He defends and preserves us against all enemies. [2]

#### **Revelation 19:11-16** [2]

##### **11.** The Rider on the White Horse

I saw heaven standing open and there before me was a white horse, whose rider is called Faithful and True. With justice he judges and makes war. **12.** His eyes are like blazing fire, and on his head are many crowns. He has a name written on him that no one knows but he himself. **13.** He is dressed in a robe dipped in blood, and his name is the Word of God. **14.** The armies of heaven were following him, riding on white horses and dressed in fine linen, white and clean. **15.** Out of his mouth comes a sharp sword with which to strike down the nations. "He will rule them with an iron scepter." He treads the winepress of the fury of the wrath of God Almighty. **16.** On his robe and on his thigh he has this name written:  
king of kings and lord of lords.

## Question 52

### What comfort is it to you that Christ will come to judge the living and the dead?

In all my sorrow and persecution I lift up my head and eagerly await as judge from heaven the very same person who before has submitted Himself to the judgment of God for my sake, and has removed all the curse from me. [1]

He will cast all His and my enemies into everlasting condemnation, but He will take me and all His chosen ones to Himself into heavenly joy and glory. [2]

#### **Luke 21:28** [1]

28. When these things begin to take place, stand up and lift up your heads, because your redemption is drawing near.”

#### **Romans 8:22-25** [1]

22. We know that the whole creation has been groaning as in the pains of childbirth right up to the present time. 23. Not only so, but we ourselves, who have the firstfruits of the Spirit, groan inwardly as we wait eagerly for our adoption as sons, the redemption of our bodies. 24. For in this hope we were saved. But hope that is seen is no hope at all. Who hopes for what he already has? 25. But if we hope for what we do not yet have, we wait for it patiently.

#### **Philippians 3:20-21** [1]

20. But our citizenship is in heaven. And we eagerly await a Savior from there, the Lord Jesus Christ, 21. who, by the power that enables him to bring everything under his control, will transform our lowly bodies so that they will be like his glorious body.

#### **Titus 2:13-14** [1]

13. while we wait for the blessed hope—the glorious appearing of our great God and Savior, Jesus Christ, 14. who gave himself for us to redeem us from all wickedness and to purify for himself a people that are his very own, eager to do what is good.

## Question 52

### What comfort is it to you that Christ will come to judge the living and the dead?

In all my sorrow and persecution I lift up my head and eagerly await as judge from heaven the very same person who before has submitted Himself to the judgment of God for my sake, and has removed all the curse from me. [1]

He will cast all His and my enemies into everlasting condemnation, but He will take me and all His chosen ones to Himself into heavenly joy and glory. [2]

**Matthew 25:31-46** [2]

**1 Thessalonians 4:16-17** [2]

**16.** For the Lord himself will come down from heaven, with a loud command, with the voice of the archangel and with the trumpet call of God, and the dead in Christ will rise first. **17.** After that, we who are still alive and are left will be caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air. And so we will be with the Lord forever.

**2 Thessalonians 1:6-10** [2]

**6.** God is just: He will pay back trouble to those who trouble you **7.** and give relief to you who are troubled, and to us as well. This will happen when the Lord Jesus is revealed from heaven in blazing fire with his powerful angels. **8.** He will punish those who do not know God and do not obey the gospel of our Lord Jesus. **9.** They will be punished with everlasting destruction and shut out from the presence of the Lord and from the majesty of his power **10.** on the day he comes to be glorified in his holy people and to be marveled at among all those who have believed. This includes you, because you believed our testimony to you.



## Question 53

### What do you believe concerning the Holy Spirit?

First, He is, together with the Father and the Son, true and eternal God. [1] Second, He is also given to me, [2] to make me by true faith share in Christ and all His benefits, [3] to comfort me, [4] and to remain with me forever. [5]

#### **Genesis 1:1-2** [1]

##### **1. The Beginning**

In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth. **2.** Now the earth was formless and empty, darkness was over the surface of the deep, and the Spirit of God was hovering over the waters.

#### **Matthew 28:19** [1]

**19.** Therefore go and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit,

#### **Acts 5:3-4** [1]

**3.** Then Peter said, "Ananias, how is it that Satan has so filled your heart that you have lied to the Holy Spirit and have kept for yourself some of the money you received for the land? **4.** Didn't it belong to you before it was sold? And after it was sold, wasn't the money at your disposal? What made you think of doing such a thing? You have not lied to men but to God."

#### **1 Corinthians 3:16** [1]

**16.** Don't you know that you yourselves are God's temple and that God's Spirit lives in you?

#### **1 Corinthians 6:19** [2]

**19.** Do you not know that your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit, who is in you, whom you have received from God? You are not your own;

#### **2 Corinthians 1:21-22** [2]

**21.** Now it is God who makes both us and you stand firm in Christ. He anointed us, **22.** set his seal of ownership on us, and put his Spirit in our hearts as a deposit, guaranteeing what is to come.

#### **Galatians 4:6** [2]

**6.** Because you are sons, God sent the Spirit of his Son into our hearts, the Spirit who calls out, "Abba, Father."

#### **Ephesians 1:13** [2]

**13.** And you also were included in Christ when you heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation. Having believed, you were marked in him with a seal, the promised Holy Spirit,

#### **Galatians 3:14** [3]

**14.** He redeemed us in order that the blessing given to Abraham might come to the Gentiles through Christ Jesus, so that by faith we might receive the promise of the Spirit.

## Question 53

### What do you believe concerning the Holy Spirit?

First, He is, together with the Father and the Son, true and eternal God. [1] Second, He is also given to me, [2] to make me by true faith share in Christ and all His benefits, [3] to comfort me, [4] and to remain with me forever. [5]

#### **1 Peter 1:2** [3]

2. who have been chosen according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, through the sanctifying work of the Spirit, for obedience to Jesus Christ and sprinkling by his blood:  
Grace and peace be yours in abundance.

#### **John 15:26** [4]

26. "When the Counselor comes, whom I will send to you from the Father, the Spirit of truth who goes out from the Father, he will testify about me.

#### **Acts 9:31** [4]

31. Then the church throughout Judea, Galilee and Samaria enjoyed a time of peace. It was strengthened; and encouraged by the Holy Spirit, it grew in numbers, living in the fear of the Lord.

#### **John 14:16-17** [5]

16. And I will ask the Father, and he will give you another Counselor to be with you forever— 17. the Spirit of truth. The world cannot accept him, because it neither sees him nor knows him. But you know him, for he lives with you and will be in you.

#### **1 Peter 4:14** [5]

14. If you are insulted because of the name of Christ, you are blessed, for the Spirit of glory and of God rests on you.

## Question 54

### What do you believe concerning the holy catholic Christian church?

I believe that the Son of God, [1] out of the whole human race, [2] from the beginning of the world to its end, [3] gathers, defends, and preserves for Himself, [4] by His Spirit and Word, [5] in the unity of the true faith, [6] a church chosen to everlasting life. [7] And I believe that I am [8] and forever shall remain a living member of it. [9]

#### **John 10:11** [1]

11. "I am the good shepherd. The good shepherd lays down his life for the sheep.

#### **Acts 20:28** [1]

28. Keep watch over yourselves and all the flock of which the Holy Spirit has made you overseers. Be shepherds of the church of God, which he bought with his own blood.

#### **Ephesians 4:11-13** [1]

11. It was he who gave some to be apostles, some to be prophets, some to be evangelists, and some to be pastors and teachers, 12. to prepare God's people for works of service, so that the body of Christ may be built up 13. until we all reach unity in the faith and in the knowledge of the Son of God and become mature, attaining to the whole measure of the fullness of Christ.

#### **Colossians 1:18** [1]

18. And he is the head of the body, the church; he is the beginning and the firstborn from among the dead, so that in everything he might have the supremacy.

#### **Genesis 26:4** [2]

4. I will make your descendants as numerous as the stars in the sky and will give them all these lands, and through your offspring all nations on earth will be blessed,

#### **Revelation 5:9** [2]

9. And they sang a new song:  
"You are worthy to take the scroll  
and to open its seals,  
because you were slain,  
and with your blood you purchased men for God  
from every tribe and language and people and nation.

#### **Isaiah 59:21** [3]

21. "As for me, this is my covenant with them," says the Lord. "My Spirit, who is on you, and my words that I have put in your mouth will not depart from your mouth, or from the mouths of your children, or from the mouths of their descendants from this time on and forever," says the Lord.

## Question 54

### What do you believe concerning the holy catholic Christian church?

I believe that the Son of God, [1] out of the whole human race, [2] from the beginning of the world to its end, [3] gathers, defends, and preserves for Himself, [4] by His Spirit and Word, [5] in the unity of the true faith, [6] a church chosen to everlasting life. [7] And I believe that I am [8] and forever shall remain a living member of it. [9]

#### **1 Corinthians 11:26** [3]

**26.** For whenever you eat this bread and drink this cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until he comes.

#### **Psalms 129:1-5** [4]

1. Psalm 129

A song of ascents.

They have greatly oppressed me from my youth—  
let Israel say— **2.** they have greatly oppressed me from my youth,  
but they have not gained the victory over me. **3.** Plowmen have  
plowed my back  
and made their furrows long. **4.** But the Lord is righteous;  
he has cut me free from the cords of the wicked. **5.** May all who  
hate Zion  
be turned back in shame.

#### **Matthew 16:18** [4]

**18.** And I tell you that you are Peter, and on this rock I will build my church, and the gates of Hades will not overcome it.

#### **John 10:28-30** [4]

**28.** I give them eternal life, and they shall never perish; no one can snatch them out of my hand. **29.** My Father, who has given them to me, is greater than all; no one can snatch them out of my Father's hand. **30.** I and the Father are one."

#### **Romans 1:16** [5]

**16.** I am not ashamed of the gospel, because it is the power of God for the salvation of everyone who believes: first for the Jew, then for the Gentile.

#### **Romans 10:14-17** [5]

**14.** How, then, can they call on the one they have not believed in? And how can they believe in the one of whom they have not heard? And how can they hear without someone preaching to them? **15.** And how can they preach unless they are sent? As it is written, "How beautiful are the feet of those who bring good news!" **16.** But not all the Israelites accepted the good news. For Isaiah says, "Lord, who has believed our message?" **17.** Consequently, faith comes from hearing the message, and the message is heard through the word of Christ.

## Question 54

### What do you believe concerning the holy catholic Christian church?

I believe that the Son of God, [1] out of the whole human race, [2] from the beginning of the world to its end, [3] gathers, defends, and preserves for Himself, [4] by His Spirit and Word, [5] in the unity of the true faith, [6] a church chosen to everlasting life. [7] And I believe that I am [8] and forever shall remain a living member of it. [9]

#### **Ephesians 5:26** [5]

26. to make her holy, cleansing her by the washing with water through the word,

#### **Acts 2:42-47** [6]

##### 42. The Fellowship of the Believers

They devoted themselves to the apostles' teaching and to the fellowship, to the breaking of bread and to prayer. 43. Everyone was filled with awe, and many wonders and miraculous signs were done by the apostles. 44. All the believers were together and had everything in common. 45. Selling their possessions and goods, they gave to anyone as he had need. 46. Every day they continued to meet together in the temple courts. They broke bread in their homes and ate together with glad and sincere hearts, 47. praising God and enjoying the favor of all the people. And the Lord added to their number daily those who were being saved.

#### **Ephesians 4:1-6** [6]

##### 1. Unity in the Body of Christ

As a prisoner for the Lord, then, I urge you to live a life worthy of the calling you have received. 2. Be completely humble and gentle; be patient, bearing with one another in love. 3. Make every effort to keep the unity of the Spirit through the bond of peace. 4. There is one body and one Spirit—just as you were called to one hope when you were called— 5. one Lord, one faith, one baptism; 6. one God and Father of all, who is over all and through all and in all.

#### **Romans 8:29** [7]

29. For those God foreknew he also predestined to be conformed to the likeness of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brothers.

## Question 54

### What do you believe concerning the holy catholic Christian church?

I believe that the Son of God, [1] out of the whole human race, [2] from the beginning of the world to its end, [3] gathers, defends, and preserves for Himself, [4] by His Spirit and Word, [5] in the unity of the true faith, [6] a church chosen to everlasting life. [7] And I believe that I am [8] and forever shall remain a living member of it. [9]

#### **Ephesians 1:3-14** [7]

#### **1 John 3:14** [8]

14. We know that we have passed from death to life, because we love our brothers. Anyone who does not love remains in death.

#### **1 John 3:19-21** [8]

19. This then is how we know that we belong to the truth, and how we set our hearts at rest in his presence 20. whenever our hearts condemn us. For God is greater than our hearts, and he knows everything. 21. Dear friends, if our hearts do not condemn us, we have confidence before God

#### **Psalms 23:6** [9]

6. Surely goodness and love will follow me  
all the days of my life,  
and I will dwell in the house of the Lord  
forever.

#### **John 10:27-28** [9]

27. My sheep listen to my voice; I know them, and they follow me.  
28. I give them eternal life, and they shall never perish; no one can snatch them out of my hand.

## Question 54

### What do you believe concerning the holy catholic Christian church?

I believe that the Son of God, [1] out of the whole human race, [2] from the beginning of the world to its end, [3] gathers, defends, and preserves for Himself, [4] by His Spirit and Word, [5] in the unity of the true faith, [6] a church chosen to everlasting life. [7] And I believe that I am [8] and forever shall remain a living member of it. [9]

#### **1 Corinthians 1:4-9** [9]

##### **4. Thanksgiving**

I always thank God for you because of his grace given you in Christ Jesus. **5.** For in him you have been enriched in every way—in all your speaking and in all your knowledge— **6.** because our testimony about Christ was confirmed in you. **7.** Therefore you do not lack any spiritual gift as you eagerly wait for our Lord Jesus Christ to be revealed. **8.** He will keep you strong to the end, so that you will be blameless on the day of our Lord Jesus Christ. **9.** God, who has called you into fellowship with his Son Jesus Christ our Lord, is faithful.

#### **1 Peter 1:3-5** [9]

##### **3. Praise to God for a Living Hope**

Praise be to the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ! In his great mercy he has given us new birth into a living hope through the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead, **4.** and into an inheritance that can never perish, spoil or fade—kept in heaven for you, **5.** who through faith are shielded by God's power until the coming of the salvation that is ready to be revealed in the last time.

## Question 55

### What do you understand by the communion of saints?

First, that believers, all and everyone, as members of Christ have communion with Him and share in all His treasures and gifts. [1]  
Second, that everyone is duty-bound to use his gifts readily and cheerfully for the benefit and well-being of the other members. [2]

#### **Romans 8:32** [1]

**32.** He who did not spare his own Son, but gave him up for us all—how will he not also, along with him, graciously give us all things?

#### **1 Corinthians 6:17** [1]

**17.** But he who unites himself with the Lord is one with him in spirit.

#### **1 Corinthians 12:4-7** [1]

**4.** There are different kinds of gifts, but the same Spirit. **5.** There are different kinds of service, but the same Lord. **6.** There are different kinds of working, but the same God works all of them in all men. **7.** Now to each one the manifestation of the Spirit is given for the common good.

#### **1 Corinthians 12:12** [1]

**12.** One Body, Many Parts

The body is a unit, though it is made up of many parts; and though all its parts are many, they form one body. So it is with Christ.

#### **1 Corinthians 12:13** [1]

**13.** For we were all baptized by one Spirit into one body—whether Jews or Greeks, slave or free—and we were all given the one Spirit to drink.

#### **1 John 1:3** [1]

**3.** We proclaim to you what we have seen and heard, so that you also may have fellowship with us. And our fellowship is with the Father and with his Son, Jesus Christ.

#### **Romans 12:4-8** [2]

**4.** Just as each of us has one body with many members, and these members do not all have the same function, **5.** so in Christ we who are many form one body, and each member belongs to all the others. **6.** We have different gifts, according to the grace given us. If a man's gift is prophesying, let him use it in proportion to his faith. **7.** If it is serving, let him serve; if it is teaching, let him teach; **8.** if it is encouraging, let him encourage; if it is contributing to the needs of others, let him give generously; if it is leadership, let him govern diligently; if it is showing mercy, let him do it cheerfully.



## Question 55

### What do you understand by the communion of saints?

First, that believers, all and everyone, as members of Christ have communion with Him and share in all His treasures and gifts. [1]

Second, that everyone is duty-bound to use his gifts readily and cheerfully for the benefit and well-being of the other members. [2]

#### **1 Corinthians 12:20-27** [2]

**20.** As it is, there are many parts, but one body. **21.** The eye cannot say to the hand, "I don't need you!" And the head cannot say to the feet, "I don't need you!" **22.** On the contrary, those parts of the body that seem to be weaker are indispensable, **23.** and the parts that we think are less honorable we treat with special honor. And the parts that are unpresentable are treated with special modesty, **24.** while our presentable parts need no special treatment. But God has combined the members of the body and has given greater honor to the parts that lacked it, **25.** so that there should be no division in the body, but that its parts should have equal concern for each other. **26.** If one part suffers, every part suffers with it; if one part is honored, every part rejoices with it. **27.** Now you are the body of Christ, and each one of you is a part of it.

#### **1 Corinthians 13:1-7** [2]

**1.** If I speak in the tongues of men and of angels, but have not love, I am only a resounding gong or a clanging cymbal. **2.** If I have the gift of prophecy and can fathom all mysteries and all knowledge, and if I have a faith that can move mountains, but have not love, I am nothing. **3.** If I give all I possess to the poor and surrender my body to the flames, but have not love, I gain nothing. **4.** Love is patient, love is kind. It does not envy, it does not boast, it is not proud. **5.** It is not rude, it is not self-seeking, it is not easily angered, it keeps no record of wrongs. **6.** Love does not delight in evil but rejoices with the truth. **7.** It always protects, always trusts, always hopes, always perseveres.

## Question 55

### What do you understand by the communion of saints?

First, that believers, all and everyone, as members of Christ have communion with Him and share in all His treasures and gifts. [1]  
Second, that everyone is duty-bound to use his gifts readily and cheerfully for the benefit and well-being of the other members. [2]

#### **Philippians 2:4-8** [2]

4. Each of you should look not only to your own interests, but also to the interests of others. 5. Your attitude should be the same as that of Christ Jesus: 6. Who, being in very nature God, did not consider equality with God something to be grasped, 7. but made himself nothing, taking the very nature of a servant, being made in human likeness. 8. And being found in appearance as a man, he humbled himself and became obedient to death—even death on a cross!

## Question 56

### What do you believe concerning the forgiveness of sins?

I believe that God, because of Christ's satisfaction, will no more remember my sins, [1]  
nor my sinful nature, against which I have to struggle all my life, [2]  
but He will graciously grant me the righteousness of Christ, that I may never come into condemnation. [3]

#### **Psalm 103:3** [1]

3. who forgives all your sins  
and heals all your diseases,

#### **Psalm 103:4** [1]

4. who redeems your life from the pit  
and crowns you with love and compassion,

#### **Psalm 103:10** [1]

10. he does not treat us as our sins deserve  
or repay us according to our iniquities.

#### **Psalm 103:12** [1]

12. as far as the east is from the west,  
so far has he removed our transgressions from us.

#### **Micah 7:18, 19** [1]

18. Who is a God like you,  
who pardons sin and forgives the transgression  
of the remnant of his inheritance?  
You do not stay angry forever  
but delight to show mercy. 19. You will again have compassion on  
us;  
you will tread our sins underfoot  
and hurl all our iniquities into the depths of the sea.

#### **2 Corinthians 5:18-21** [1]

18. All this is from God, who reconciled us to himself through  
Christ and gave us the ministry of reconciliation: 19. that God was  
reconciling the world to himself in Christ, not counting men's sins  
against them. And he has committed to us the message of  
reconciliation. 20. We are therefore Christ's ambassadors, as  
though God were making his appeal through us. We implore you  
on Christ's behalf: Be reconciled to God. 21. God made him who  
had no sin to be sin for us, so that in him we might become the  
righteousness of God.

## Question 56

### What do you believe concerning the forgiveness of sins?

I believe that God, because of Christ's satisfaction, will no more remember my sins, [1]  
nor my sinful nature, against which I have to struggle all my life, [2]  
but He will graciously grant me the righteousness of Christ, that I may never come into condemnation. [3]

#### **1 John 1:7** [1]

7. But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of Jesus, his Son, purifies us from all sin.

#### **1 John 2:2** [1]

2. He is the atoning sacrifice for our sins, and not only for ours but also for the sins of the whole world.

#### **Romans 7:21-25** [2]

21. So I find this law at work: When I want to do good, evil is right there with me. 22. For in my inner being I delight in God's law; 23. but I see another law at work in the members of my body, waging war against the law of my mind and making me a prisoner of the law of sin at work within my members. 24. What a wretched man I am! Who will rescue me from this body of death? 25. Thanks be to God—through Jesus Christ our Lord!  
So then, I myself in my mind am a slave to God's law, but in the sinful nature a slave to the law of sin.

#### **John 3:17-18** [3]

17. For God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but to save the world through him. 18. Whoever believes in him is not condemned, but whoever does not believe stands condemned already because he has not believed in the name of God's one and only Son.

#### **John 5:24** [3]

24. "I tell you the truth, whoever hears my word and believes him who sent me has eternal life and will not be condemned; he has crossed over from death to life.

#### **Romans 8:1-2** [3]

##### **1. Life Through the Spirit**

Therefore, there is now no condemnation for those who are in Christ Jesus, 2. because through Christ Jesus the law of the Spirit of life set me free from the law of sin and death.

## Question 57

### What comfort does the resurrection of the body offer you?

Not only shall my soul after this life immediately be taken up to Christ, my Head, [1]  
but also this my flesh, raised by the power of Christ, shall be reunited with my soul and made like Christ's glorious body. [2]

#### **Luke 16:22** [1]

22. "The time came when the beggar died and the angels carried him to Abraham's side. The rich man also died and was buried.

#### **Luke 23:43** [1]

43. Jesus answered him, "I tell you the truth, today you will be with me in paradise."

#### **Philippians 1:21-23** [1]

21. For to me, to live is Christ and to die is gain. 22. If I am to go on living in the body, this will mean fruitful labor for me. Yet what shall I choose? I do not know! 23. I am torn between the two: I desire to depart and be with Christ, which is better by far;

#### **Job 19:25-26** [2]

25. I know that my Redeemer lives,  
and that in the end he will stand upon the earth. 26. And after my skin has been destroyed,  
yet in my flesh I will see God;

#### **1 Corinthians 15:20** [2]

20. But Christ has indeed been raised from the dead, the firstfruits of those who have fallen asleep.

#### **1 Corinthians 15:42-46** [2]

42. So will it be with the resurrection of the dead. The body that is sown is perishable, it is raised imperishable; 43. it is sown in dishonor, it is raised in glory; it is sown in weakness, it is raised in power; 44. it is sown a natural body, it is raised a spiritual body. If there is a natural body, there is also a spiritual body. 45. So it is written: "The first man Adam became a living being"; the last Adam, a life-giving spirit. 46. The spiritual did not come first, but the natural, and after that the spiritual.

#### **1 Corinthians 15:54** [2]

54. When the perishable has been clothed with the imperishable, and the mortal with immortality, then the saying that is written will come true: "Death has been swallowed up in victory."

#### **Philippians 3:21** [2]

21. who, by the power that enables him to bring everything under his control, will transform our lowly bodies so that they will be like his glorious body.

### Question 57

## What comfort does the resurrection of the body offer you?

Not only shall my soul after this life immediately be taken up to Christ, my Head, [1]  
but also this my flesh, raised by the power of Christ, shall be reunited with my soul and made like Christ's glorious body. [2]

### 1 John 3:2 [2]

2. Dear friends, now we are children of God, and what we will be has not yet been made known. But we know that when he appears, we shall be like him, for we shall see him as he is.

## Question 58

### What comfort do you receive from the article about the life everlasting?

Since I now already feel in my heart the beginning of eternal joy, [1]

I shall after this life possess perfect blessedness, such as no eye has seen, nor ear heard, nor the heart of man conceived-- a blessedness in which to praise God forever. [2]

#### **John 17:3** [1]

3. Now this is eternal life: that they may know you, the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom you have sent.

#### **Romans 14:17** [1]

17. For the kingdom of God is not a matter of eating and drinking, but of righteousness, peace and joy in the Holy Spirit,

#### **2 Corinthians 5:2-3** [1]

2. Meanwhile we groan, longing to be clothed with our heavenly dwelling, 3. because when we are clothed, we will not be found naked.

#### **John 17:24** [2]

24. "Father, I want those you have given me to be with me where I am, and to see my glory, the glory you have given me because you loved me before the creation of the world.

#### **1 Corinthians 2:9** [2]

9. However, as it is written:

"No eye has seen,  
no ear has heard,  
no mind has conceived  
what God has prepared for those who love him"—

## Question 59

### But what does it help you now that you believe all this?

In Christ I am righteous before God and heir to life everlasting. [1]

#### **Habakkuk 2:4** [1]

4. "See, he is puffed up;  
his desires are not upright—  
but the righteous will live by his faith—

#### **John 3:36** [1]

36. Whoever believes in the Son has eternal life, but whoever rejects the Son will not see life, for God's wrath remains on him."

#### **Romans 1:17** [1]

17. For in the gospel a righteousness from God is revealed, a righteousness that is by faith from first to last, just as it is written: "The righteous will live by faith."

#### **Romans 5:1-2** [1]

1. Peace and Joy

Therefore, since we have been justified through faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ, 2. through whom we have gained access by faith into this grace in which we now stand. And we rejoice in the hope of the glory of God.



## Question 60

### How are you righteous before God?

Only by true faith in Jesus Christ. [1]

Although my conscience accuses me that I have grievously sinned against all God's commandments, have never kept any of them, [2]

and am still inclined to all evil, [3] yet God, without any merit of my own, [4] out of mere grace, [5]

imputes to me the perfect satisfaction, righteousness, and holiness of Christ. [6]

He grants these to me as if I had never had nor committed any sin, and as if I myself had accomplished all the obedience which Christ has rendered for me, [7]

if only I accept this gift with a believing heart. [8]

#### **Romans 3:21-28** [1]

##### **21. Righteousness Through Faith**

But now a righteousness from God, apart from law, has been made known, to which the Law and the Prophets testify. **22.** This righteousness from God comes through faith in Jesus Christ to all who believe. There is no difference, **23.** for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God, **24.** and are justified freely by his grace through the redemption that came by Christ Jesus. **25.** God presented him as a sacrifice of atonement, through faith in his blood. He did this to demonstrate his justice, because in his forbearance he had left the sins committed beforehand unpunished— **26.** he did it to demonstrate his justice at the present time, so as to be just and the one who justifies those who have faith in Jesus. **27.** Where, then, is boasting? It is excluded. On what principle? On that of observing the law? No, but on that of faith. **28.** For we maintain that a man is justified by faith apart from observing the law.

#### **Galatians 2:16** [1]

**16.** know that a man is not justified by observing the law, but by faith in Jesus Christ. So we, too, have put our faith in Christ Jesus that we may be justified by faith in Christ and not by observing the law, because by observing the law no one will be justified.

#### **Ephesians 2:8, 9** [1]

**8.** For it is by grace you have been saved, through faith—and this not from yourselves, it is the gift of God— **9.** not by works, so that no one can boast.

## Question 60

### How are you righteous before God?

Only by true faith in Jesus Christ. [1]

Although my conscience accuses me that I have grievously sinned against all God's commandments, have never kept any of them, [2]

and am still inclined to all evil, [3] yet God, without any merit of my own, [4] out of mere grace, [5]

imputes to me the perfect satisfaction, righteousness, and holiness of Christ. [6]

He grants these to me as if I had never had nor committed any sin, and as if I myself had accomplished all the obedience which Christ has rendered for me, [7]

if only I accept this gift with a believing heart. [8]

#### **Philippians 3:8-11** [1]

8. What is more, I consider everything a loss compared to the surpassing greatness of knowing Christ Jesus my Lord, for whose sake I have lost all things. I consider them rubbish, that I may gain Christ 9. and be found in him, not having a righteousness of my own that comes from the law, but that which is through faith in Christ—the righteousness that comes from God and is by faith. 10. I want to know Christ and the power of his resurrection and the fellowship of sharing in his sufferings, becoming like him in his death, 11. and so, somehow, to attain to the resurrection from the dead.

#### **Romans 3:9-10** [2]

9. No One Is Righteous

What shall we conclude then? Are we any better? Not at all! We have already made the charge that Jews and Gentiles alike are all under sin. 10. As it is written:

"There is no one righteous, not even one;

#### **Romans 7:23** [3]

23. but I see another law at work in the members of my body, waging war against the law of my mind and making me a prisoner of the law of sin at work within my members.

#### **Deuteronomy 9:6** [4]

6. Understand, then, that it is not because of your righteousness that the Lord your God is giving you this good land to possess, for you are a stiff-necked people.

#### **Ezekiel 36:22** [4]

22. "Therefore say to the house of Israel, 'This is what the Sovereign Lord says: It is not for your sake, O house of Israel, that I am going to do these things, but for the sake of my holy name, which you have profaned among the nations where you have gone.

## Question 60

### How are you righteous before God?

Only by true faith in Jesus Christ. [1]

Although my conscience accuses me that I have grievously sinned against all God's commandments, have never kept any of them, [2]

and am still inclined to all evil, [3] yet God, without any merit of my own, [4] out of mere grace, [5]

imputes to me the perfect satisfaction, righteousness, and holiness of Christ. [6]

He grants these to me as if I had never had nor committed any sin, and as if I myself had accomplished all the obedience which Christ has rendered for me, [7]

if only I accept this gift with a believing heart. [8]

#### **Titus 3:4-5** [4]

4. But when the kindness and love of God our Savior appeared, 5. he saved us, not because of righteous things we had done, but because of his mercy. He saved us through the washing of rebirth and renewal by the Holy Spirit,

#### **Romans 3:24** [5]

24. and are justified freely by his grace through the redemption that came by Christ Jesus.

#### **Ephesians 2:8** [5]

8. For it is by grace you have been saved, through faith—and this not from yourselves, it is the gift of God—

#### **Romans 4:3-5** [6]

3. What does the Scripture say? "Abraham believed God, and it was credited to him as righteousness." 4. Now when a man works, his wages are not credited to him as a gift, but as an obligation. 5. However, to the man who does not work but trusts God who justifies the wicked, his faith is credited as righteousness.

#### **2 Corinthians 5:17-19** [6]

17. Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation; the old has gone, the new has come! 18. All this is from God, who reconciled us to himself through Christ and gave us the ministry of reconciliation: 19. that God was reconciling the world to himself in Christ, not counting men's sins against them. And he has committed to us the message of reconciliation.

## Question 60

### How are you righteous before God?

Only by true faith in Jesus Christ. [1]

Although my conscience accuses me that I have grievously sinned against all God's commandments, have never kept any of them, [2]

and am still inclined to all evil, [3] yet God, without any merit of my own, [4] out of mere grace, [5]

imputes to me the perfect satisfaction, righteousness, and holiness of Christ. [6]

He grants these to me as if I had never had nor committed any sin, and as if I myself had accomplished all the obedience which Christ has rendered for me, [7]

if only I accept this gift with a believing heart. [8]

#### **1 John 2:1-2** [6]

1. My dear children, I write this to you so that you will not sin. But if anybody does sin, we have one who speaks to the Father in our defense—Jesus Christ, the Righteous One. 2. He is the atoning sacrifice for our sins, and not only for ours but also for the sins of the whole world.

#### **Romans 4:24-25** [7]

24. but also for us, to whom God will credit righteousness—for us who believe in him who raised Jesus our Lord from the dead. 25. He was delivered over to death for our sins and was raised to life for our justification.

#### **2 Corinthians 5:21** [7]

21. God made him who had no sin to be sin for us, so that in him we might become the righteousness of God.

#### **John 3:18** [8]

18. Whoever believes in him is not condemned, but whoever does not believe stands condemned already because he has not believed in the name of God's one and only Son.

#### **Acts 16:30-31** [8]

30. He then brought them out and asked, "Sirs, what must I do to be saved?" 31. They replied, "Believe in the Lord Jesus, and you will be saved—you and your household."

#### **Romans 3:22** [8]

22. This righteousness from God comes through faith in Jesus Christ to all who believe. There is no difference,

## Question 61

### Why do you say that you are righteous only by faith?

Not that I am acceptable to God on account of the worthiness of my faith, for only the satisfaction, righteousness, and holiness of Christ is my righteousness before God. [1]

I can receive this righteousness and make it mine my own by faith only. [2]

#### **1 Corinthians 1:30-31** [1]

**30.** It is because of him that you are in Christ Jesus, who has become for us wisdom from God—that is, our righteousness, holiness and redemption. **31.** Therefore, as it is written: “Let him who boasts boast in the Lord.”

#### **1 Corinthians 2:2** [1]

**2.** For I resolved to know nothing while I was with you except Jesus Christ and him crucified.

#### **Romans 10:10** [2]

**10.** For it is with your heart that you believe and are justified, and it is with your mouth that you confess and are saved.

#### **1 John 5:10-12** [2]

**10.** Anyone who believes in the Son of God has this testimony in his heart. Anyone who does not believe God has made him out to be a liar, because he has not believed the testimony God has given about his Son. **11.** And this is the testimony: God has given us eternal life, and this life is in his Son. **12.** He who has the Son has life; he who does not have the Son of God does not have life.

## Question 62

# **But why can our good works not be our righteousness before God, or at least a part of it?**

Because the righteousness which can stand before God's judgment must be absolutely perfect and in complete agreement with the law of God, [1]

whereas even our best works in this life are all imperfect and defiled with sin. [2]

### **Deuteronomy 27:26** [1]

26. "Cursed is the man who does not uphold the words of this law by carrying them out."

Then all the people shall say, "Amen!"

### **Galatians 3:10** [1]

10. All who rely on observing the law are under a curse, for it is written: "Cursed is everyone who does not continue to do everything written in the Book of the Law."

### **Isaiah 64:6** [2]

6. All of us have become like one who is unclean,  
and all our righteous acts are like filthy rags;  
we all shrivel up like a leaf,  
and like the wind our sins sweep us away.

### Question 63

## **But do our good works earn nothing, even though God promises to reward them in this life and the next?**

This reward is not earned [1] ; it is a gift of grace. [2]

### **Matthew 5:12** [1]

12. Rejoice and be glad, because great is your reward in heaven, for in the same way they persecuted the prophets who were before you.

### **Hebrews 11:6** [1]

6. And without faith it is impossible to please God, because anyone who comes to him must believe that he exists and that he rewards those who earnestly seek him.

### **Luke 17:10** [2]

10. So you also, when you have done everything you were told to do, should say, 'We are unworthy servants; we have only done our duty.'"

### **2 Timothy 4:7-8** [2]

7. I have fought the good fight, I have finished the race, I have kept the faith. 8. Now there is in store for me the crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous Judge, will award to me on that day—and not only to me, but also to all who have longed for his appearing.

## Question 64

### Does this teaching not make people careless and wicked?

No. It is impossible that those grafted into Christ by true faith should not bring forth fruits of thankfulness. [1]

#### **Matthew 7:18** [1]

18. A good tree cannot bear bad fruit, and a bad tree cannot bear good fruit.

#### **Luke 6:43-45** [1]

43. A Tree and Its Fruit

"No good tree bears bad fruit, nor does a bad tree bear good fruit.

44. Each tree is recognized by its own fruit. People do not pick figs from thornbushes, or grapes from briars. 45. The good man brings good things out of the good stored up in his heart, and the evil man brings evil things out of the evil stored up in his heart. For out of the overflow of his heart his mouth speaks.

#### **John 15:5** [1]

5. "I am the vine; you are the branches. If a man remains in me and I in him, he will bear much fruit; apart from me you can do nothing.



## Question 65

# Since then faith alone makes us share in Christ and all His benefits, where does this faith come from?

From the Holy Spirit, [1] who works it in our hearts by the preaching of the gospel, [2] and strengthens it by the use of the sacraments. [3]

### **John 3:5** [1]

5. Jesus answered, "I tell you the truth, no one can enter the kingdom of God unless he is born of water and the Spirit.

### **1 Corinthians 2:10-14** [1]

10. but God has revealed it to us by his Spirit.

The Spirit searches all things, even the deep things of God. 11. For who among men knows the thoughts of a man except the man's spirit within him? In the same way no one knows the thoughts of God except the Spirit of God. 12. We have not received the spirit of the world but the Spirit who is from God, that we may understand what God has freely given us. 13. This is what we speak, not in words taught us by human wisdom but in words taught by the Spirit, expressing spiritual truths in spiritual words. 14. The man without the Spirit does not accept the things that come from the Spirit of God, for they are foolishness to him, and he cannot understand them, because they are spiritually discerned.

### **Ephesians 2:8** [1]

8. For it is by grace you have been saved, through faith—and this not from yourselves, it is the gift of God—

### **Philippians 1:29** [1]

29. For it has been granted to you on behalf of Christ not only to believe on him, but also to suffer for him,

### **Romans 10:17** [2]

17. Consequently, faith comes from hearing the message, and the message is heard through the word of Christ.

### **1 Peter 1:23-25** [2]

23. For you have been born again, not of perishable seed, but of imperishable, through the living and enduring word of God. 24. For, "All men are like grass, and all their glory is like the flowers of the field; the grass withers and the flowers fall, 25. but the word of the Lord stands forever." And this is the word that was preached to you.

### Question 65

**Since then faith alone makes us share in Christ and all His benefits, where does this faith come from?**

From the Holy Spirit, [1] who works it in our hearts by the preaching of the gospel, [2] and strengthens it by the use of the sacraments. [3]

#### **Matthew 28:19-20** [3]

19. Therefore go and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, 20. and teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you. And surely I am with you always, to the very end of the age."

#### **1 Corinthians 10:16** [3]

16. Is not the cup of thanksgiving for which we give thanks a participation in the blood of Christ? And is not the bread that we break a participation in the body of Christ?

## Question 66

### What are the sacraments?

The sacraments are holy, visible signs and seals. They were instituted by God so that by their use He might the more fully declare and seal to us the promise of the gospel. [1]

And this is the promise: that God graciously grants us forgiveness of sins and everlasting life because of the one sacrifice of Christ accomplished on the cross. [2]

#### **Genesis 17:11** [1]

11. You are to undergo circumcision, and it will be the sign of the covenant between me and you.

#### **Deuteronomy 30:6** [1]

6. The Lord your God will circumcise your hearts and the hearts of your descendants, so that you may love him with all your heart and with all your soul, and live.

#### **Romans 4:1** [1]

1. Abraham Justified by Faith

What then shall we say that Abraham, our forefather, discovered in this matter?

#### **Matthew 26:27-28** [2]

27. Then he took the cup, gave thanks and offered it to them, saying, "Drink from it, all of you. 28. This is my blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many for the forgiveness of sins.

#### **Acts 2:38** [2]

38. Peter replied, "Repent and be baptized, every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins. And you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit.

#### **Hebrews 10:10** [2]

10. And by that will, we have been made holy through the sacrifice of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.

### Question 67

## **Are both the Word and the sacraments then intended to focus our faith on the sacrifice of Jesus Christ on the cross as the only ground of our salvation?**

Yes, indeed. The Holy Spirit teaches us in the gospel and assures us by the sacraments that our entire salvation rests on Christ's one sacrifice for us on the cross. [1]

### **Romans 6:3** [1]

3. Or don't you know that all of us who were baptized into Christ Jesus were baptized into his death?

### **1 Corinthians 11:26** [1]

26. For whenever you eat this bread and drink this cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until he comes.

### **Galatians 3:27** [1]

27. for all of you who were baptized into Christ have clothed yourselves with Christ.

### Question 68

## How many sacraments has Christ instituted in the new covenant?

Two: holy baptism and the holy supper. [1]

### **Matthew 28:19-20** [1]

19. Therefore go and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, 20. and teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you. And surely I am with you always, to the very end of the age."

### **1 Corinthians 11:23-26** [1]

23. For I received from the Lord what I also passed on to you: The Lord Jesus, on the night he was betrayed, took bread, 24. and when he had given thanks, he broke it and said, "This is my body, which is for you; do this in remembrance of me." 25. In the same way, after supper he took the cup, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood; do this, whenever you drink it, in remembrance of me." 26. For whenever you eat this bread and drink this cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until he comes.

## Question 69

# How does holy baptism signify and seal to you that the one sacrifice of Christ on the cross benefits you?

In this way: Christ instituted this outward washing [1]  
and with it gave the promise that, as surely as water washes away the dirt from the body, so certainly His blood and Spirit wash away the impurity of my soul, that is, all my sins. [2]

### **Matthew 28:19** [1]

19. Therefore go and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit,

### **Matthew 3:11** [2]

11. "I baptize you with water for repentance. But after me will come one who is more powerful than I, whose sandals I am not fit to carry. He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire.

### **Mark 16:16** [2]

16. Whoever believes and is baptized will be saved, but whoever does not believe will be condemned.

### **John 1:33** [2]

33. I would not have known him, except that the one who sent me to baptize with water told me, 'The man on whom you see the Spirit come down and remain is he who will baptize with the Holy Spirit.'

### **Acts 2:38** [2]

38. Peter replied, "Repent and be baptized, every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins. And you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit.

### **Romans 6:3-4** [2]

3. Or don't you know that all of us who were baptized into Christ Jesus were baptized into his death? 4. We were therefore buried with him through baptism into death in order that, just as Christ was raised from the dead through the glory of the Father, we too may live a new life.

### **1 Peter 3:21** [2]

21. and this water symbolizes baptism that now saves you also—not the removal of dirt from the body but the pledge of a good conscience toward God. It saves you by the resurrection of Jesus Christ,

## Question 70

### What does it mean to be washed with Christ's blood and Spirit?

To be washed with Christ's blood means to receive forgiveness of sins from God, through grace, because of Christ's blood, poured out for us in His sacrifice on the cross. [1]

To be washed with His Spirit means to be renewed by the Holy Spirit and sanctified to be members of Christ, so that more and more we become dead to sin and lead a holy and blameless life. [2]

#### **Ezekiel 36:25** [1]

25. I will sprinkle clean water on you, and you will be clean; I will cleanse you from all your impurities and from all your idols.

#### **Zechariah 13:1** [1]

1. Cleansing From Sin

"On that day a fountain will be opened to the house of David and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, to cleanse them from sin and impurity.

#### **Ephesians 1:7** [1]

7. In him we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, in accordance with the riches of God's grace

#### **Hebrews 12:24** [1]

24. to Jesus the mediator of a new covenant, and to the sprinkled blood that speaks a better word than the blood of Abel.

#### **1 Peter 1:2** [1]

2. who have been chosen according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, through the sanctifying work of the Spirit, for obedience to Jesus Christ and sprinkling by his blood: Grace and peace be yours in abundance.

#### **Revelation 1:5** [1]

5. and from Jesus Christ, who is the faithful witness, the firstborn from the dead, and the ruler of the kings of the earth. To him who loves us and has freed us from our sins by his blood,

#### **Revelation 7:14** [1]

14. I answered, "Sir, you know." And he said, "These are they who have come out of the great tribulation; they have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb.

## Question 70

### What does it mean to be washed with Christ's blood and Spirit?

To be washed with Christ's blood means to receive forgiveness of sins from God, through grace, because of Christ's blood, poured out for us in His sacrifice on the cross. [1]

To be washed with His Spirit means to be renewed by the Holy Spirit and sanctified to be members of Christ, so that more and more we become dead to sin and lead a holy and blameless life. [2]

#### **John 3:5-8** [2]

5. Jesus answered, "I tell you the truth, no one can enter the kingdom of God unless he is born of water and the Spirit. 6. Flesh gives birth to flesh, but the Spirit gives birth to spirit. 7. You should not be surprised at my saying, 'You must be born again.' 8. The wind blows wherever it pleases. You hear its sound, but you cannot tell where it comes from or where it is going. So it is with everyone born of the Spirit."

#### **Romans 6:4** [2]

4. We were therefore buried with him through baptism into death in order that, just as Christ was raised from the dead through the glory of the Father, we too may live a new life.

#### **1 Corinthians 6:11** [2]

11. And that is what some of you were. But you were washed, you were sanctified, you were justified in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ and by the Spirit of our God.

#### **Colossians 2:11-12** [2]

11. In him you were also circumcised, in the putting off of the sinful nature, not with a circumcision done by the hands of men but with the circumcision done by Christ, 12. having been buried with him in baptism and raised with him through your faith in the power of God, who raised him from the dead.



### Question 71

## **Where has Christ promised that He will wash us with His blood and Spirit as surely as we are washed with the water of baptism?**

In the institution of baptism, where He says: Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit. [1]

He who believes and is baptized will be saved, but he who does not believe will be condemned. [2]

This promise is repeated where Scripture calls baptism the washing of regeneration and the washing away of sins. [3]

#### **Matthew 28:19** [1]

19. Therefore go and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit,

#### **Mark 16:16** [2]

16. Whoever believes and is baptized will be saved, but whoever does not believe will be condemned.

#### **Titus 3:5** [3]

5. he saved us, not because of righteous things we had done, but because of his mercy. He saved us through the washing of rebirth and renewal by the Holy Spirit,

#### **Acts 22:16** [3]

16. And now what are you waiting for? Get up, be baptized and wash your sins away, calling on his name.'

## Question 72

### Does this outward washing with water itself wash away sins?

No, only the blood of Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit cleanse us from all sins. [1]

#### **Matthew 3:11** [1]

11. "I baptize you with water for repentance. But after me will come one who is more powerful than I, whose sandals I am not fit to carry. He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire.

#### **1 Peter 3:21** [1]

21. and this water symbolizes baptism that now saves you also—not the removal of dirt from the body but the pledge of a good conscience toward God. It saves you by the resurrection of Jesus Christ,

#### **1 John 1:7** [1]

7. But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of Jesus, his Son, purifies us from all sin.

## Question 73

# Why then does the Holy Spirit call baptism the washing of regeneration and the washing away of sins?

God speaks in this way for a good reason. He wants to teach us that the blood and Spirit of Christ remove our sins just as water takes away dirt from the body. [1]

But, even more important, He wants to assure us by this divine pledge and sign that we are as truly cleansed from our sins spiritually as we are bodily washed with water. [2]

### **1 Corinthians 6:11** [1]

11. And that is what some of you were. But you were washed, you were sanctified, you were justified in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ and by the Spirit of our God.

### **Revelation 1:5** [1]

5. and from Jesus Christ, who is the faithful witness, the firstborn from the dead, and the ruler of the kings of the earth.  
To him who loves us and has freed us from our sins by his blood,

### **Revelation 7:14** [1]

14. I answered, "Sir, you know."  
And he said, "These are they who have come out of the great tribulation; they have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb.

### **Mark 16:16** [2]

16. Whoever believes and is baptized will be saved, but whoever does not believe will be condemned.

### **Acts 2:38** [2]

38. Peter replied, "Repent and be baptized, every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins. And you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit.

### **Romans 6:3-4** [2]

3. Or don't you know that all of us who were baptized into Christ Jesus were baptized into his death? 4. We were therefore buried with him through baptism into death in order that, just as Christ was raised from the dead through the glory of the Father, we too may live a new life.

### **Galatians 3:27** [2]

27. for all of you who were baptized into Christ have clothed yourselves with Christ.

## Question 74

### Should infants, too, be baptized?

Yes. Infants as well as adults belong to God's covenant and congregation. [1]

Through Christ's blood the redemption from sin and the Holy Spirit, who works faith, are promised to them no less than to adults. [2]

Therefore, by baptism, as sign of the covenant, they must be grafted into the Christian church and distinguished from the children of unbelievers. [3]

This was done in the old covenant by circumcision, [4] in place of which baptism was instituted in the new covenant. [5]

#### **Genesis 17:7** [1]

7. I will establish my covenant as an everlasting covenant between me and you and your descendants after you for the generations to come, to be your God and the God of your descendants after you.

#### **Matthew 19:14** [1]

14. Jesus said, "Let the little children come to me, and do not hinder them, for the kingdom of heaven belongs to such as these."

#### **Psalms 22:11** [2]

11. Do not be far from me,  
for trouble is near  
and there is no one to help.

#### **Isaiah 44:1-3** [2]

1. Israel the Chosen

"But now listen, O Jacob, my servant,  
Israel, whom I have chosen. 2. This is what the Lord says—  
he who made you, who formed you in the womb,  
and who will help you:

Do not be afraid, O Jacob, my servant,

Jeshurun, whom I have chosen. 3. For I will pour water on the  
thirsty land,  
and streams on the dry ground;  
I will pour out my Spirit on your offspring,  
and my blessing on your descendants.

#### **Acts 2:38-39** [2]

38. Peter replied, "Repent and be baptized, every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins. And you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit. 39. The promise is for you and your children and for all who are far off—for all whom the Lord our God will call."

## Question 74

### Should infants, too, be baptized?

Yes. Infants as well as adults belong to God's covenant and congregation. [1]

Through Christ's blood the redemption from sin and the Holy Spirit, who works faith, are promised to them no less than to adults. [2]

Therefore, by baptism, as sign of the covenant, they must be grafted into the Christian church and distinguished from the children of unbelievers. [3]

This was done in the old covenant by circumcision, [4] in place of which baptism was instituted in the new covenant. [5]

#### **Acts 16:31** [2]

31. They replied, "Believe in the Lord Jesus, and you will be saved—you and your household."

#### **Acts 10:47** [3]

47. "Can anyone keep these people from being baptized with water? They have received the Holy Spirit just as we have."

#### **1 Corinthians 7:14** [3]

14. For the unbelieving husband has been sanctified through his wife, and the unbelieving wife has been sanctified through her believing husband. Otherwise your children would be unclean, but as it is, they are holy.

#### **Genesis 17:9-14** [4]

9. Then God said to Abraham, "As for you, you must keep my covenant, you and your descendants after you for the generations to come. 10. This is my covenant with you and your descendants after you, the covenant you are to keep: Every male among you shall be circumcised. 11. You are to undergo circumcision, and it will be the sign of the covenant between me and you. 12. For the generations to come every male among you who is eight days old must be circumcised, including those born in your household or bought with money from a foreigner—those who are not your offspring. 13. Whether born in your household or bought with your money, they must be circumcised. My covenant in your flesh is to be an everlasting covenant. 14. Any uncircumcised male, who has not been circumcised in the flesh, will be cut off from his people; he has broken my covenant."

## Question 74

### Should infants, too, be baptized?

Yes. Infants as well as adults belong to God's covenant and congregation. [1]

Through Christ's blood the redemption from sin and the Holy Spirit, who works faith, are promised to them no less than to adults. [2]

Therefore, by baptism, as sign of the covenant, they must be grafted into the Christian church and distinguished from the children of unbelievers. [3]

This was done in the old covenant by circumcision, [4] in place of which baptism was instituted in the new covenant. [5]

#### **Colossians 2:11-13** [5]

11. In him you were also circumcised, in the putting off of the sinful nature, not with a circumcision done by the hands of men but with the circumcision done by Christ, 12. having been buried with him in baptism and raised with him through your faith in the power of God, who raised him from the dead. 13. When you were dead in your sins and in the uncircumcision of your sinful nature, God made you alive with Christ. He forgave us all our sins,

## Question 75

# How does the Lord's Supper signify and seal to you that you share in Christ's one sacrifice on the cross and in all His gifts?

In this way: Christ has commanded me and all believers to eat of this broken bread and drink of this cup in remembrance of Him. With this command He gave these promises: [1]

First, as surely as I see with my eyes the bread of the Lord broken for me and the cup given to me, so surely was His body offered for me and His blood poured out for me on the cross. Second, as surely as I receive from the hand of the minister and taste with my mouth the bread and the cup of the Lord as sure signs of Christ's body and blood, so surely does He Himself nourish and refresh my soul to everlasting life with His crucified body and shed blood. [2]

### **Matthew 26:26-28** [1]

**26.** While they were eating, Jesus took bread, gave thanks and broke it, and gave it to his disciples, saying, "Take and eat; this is my body." **27.** Then he took the cup, gave thanks and offered it to them, saying, "Drink from it, all of you. **28.** This is my blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many for the forgiveness of sins.

### **Mark 14:22-24** [1]

**22.** While they were eating, Jesus took bread, gave thanks and broke it, and gave it to his disciples, saying, "Take it; this is my body." **23.** Then he took the cup, gave thanks and offered it to them, and they all drank from it. **24.** "This is my blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many," he said to them.

### **Luke 22:19-20** [1]

**19.** And he took bread, gave thanks and broke it, and gave it to them, saying, "This is my body given for you; do this in remembrance of me." **20.** In the same way, after the supper he took the cup, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.

### **1 Corinthians 11:23-25** [1]

**23.** For I received from the Lord what I also passed on to you: The Lord Jesus, on the night he was betrayed, took bread, **24.** and when he had given thanks, he broke it and said, "This is my body, which is for you; do this in remembrance of me." **25.** In the same way, after supper he took the cup, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood; do this, whenever you drink it, in remembrance of me."

## Question 76

### What does it mean to eat the crucified body of Christ and to drink His shed blood?

First, to accept with a believing heart all the suffering and the death of Christ, and so receive forgiveness of sins and life eternal. [1]

Second, to be united more and more to His sacred body through the Holy Spirit, who lives both in Christ and in us. [2]

Therefore, although Christ is in heaven [3] and we are on earth, yet we are flesh of His flesh and bone of His bones, [4]

and we forever live and are governed by one Spirit, as the members of our body are by one soul. [5]

#### **John 6:35** [1]

35. Then Jesus declared, "I am the bread of life. He who comes to me will never go hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.

#### **John 6:40** [1]

40. For my Father's will is that everyone who looks to the Son and believes in him shall have eternal life, and I will raise him up at the last day."

#### **John 6:50-54** [1]

50. But here is the bread that comes down from heaven, which a man may eat and not die. 51. I am the living bread that came down from heaven. If anyone eats of this bread, he will live forever. This bread is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world." 52. Then the Jews began to argue sharply among themselves, "How can this man give us his flesh to eat?" 53. Jesus said to them, "I tell you the truth, unless you eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink his blood, you have no life in you. 54. Whoever eats my flesh and drinks my blood has eternal life, and I will raise him up at the last day.

#### **John 6:55-56** [2]

55. For my flesh is real food and my blood is real drink. 56. Whoever eats my flesh and drinks my blood remains in me, and I in him.

#### **1 Corinthians 12:13** [2]

13. For we were all baptized by one Spirit into one body—whether Jews or Greeks, slave or free—and we were all given the one Spirit to drink.

#### **Acts 1:9-11** [3]

9. After he said this, he was taken up before their very eyes, and a cloud hid him from their sight. 10. They were looking intently up into the sky as he was going, when suddenly two men dressed in white stood beside them. 11. "Men of Galilee," they said, "why do you stand here looking into the sky? This same Jesus, who has been taken from you into heaven, will come back in the same way you have seen him go into heaven."



## Question 76

### What does it mean to eat the crucified body of Christ and to drink His shed blood?

First, to accept with a believing heart all the suffering and the death of Christ, and so receive forgiveness of sins and life eternal. [1]

Second, to be united more and more to His sacred body through the Holy Spirit, who lives both in Christ and in us. [2]

Therefore, although Christ is in heaven [3] and we are on earth, yet we are flesh of His flesh and bone of His bones, [4]

and we forever live and are governed by one Spirit, as the members of our body are by one soul. [5]

#### **Acts 3:21** [3]

21. He must remain in heaven until the time comes for God to restore everything, as he promised long ago through his holy prophets.

#### **1 Corinthians 11:26** [3]

26. For whenever you eat this bread and drink this cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until he comes.

#### **Colossians 3:1** [3]

##### 1. Rules for Holy Living

Since, then, you have been raised with Christ, set your hearts on things above, where Christ is seated at the right hand of God.

#### **1 Corinthians 6:15-17** [4]

15. Do you not know that your bodies are members of Christ himself? Shall I then take the members of Christ and unite them with a prostitute? Never! 16. Do you not know that he who unites himself with a prostitute is one with her in body? For it is said, "The two will become one flesh." 17. But he who unites himself with the Lord is one with him in spirit.

#### **Ephesians 5:29-30** [4]

29. After all, no one ever hated his own body, but he feeds and cares for it, just as Christ does the church— 30. for we are members of his body.

#### **1 John 4:13** [4]

13. We know that we live in him and he in us, because he has given us of his Spirit.

#### **John 6:56-58** [5]

56. Whoever eats my flesh and drinks my blood remains in me, and I in him. 57. Just as the living Father sent me and I live because of the Father, so the one who feeds on me will live because of me. 58. This is the bread that came down from heaven. Your forefathers ate manna and died, but he who feeds on this bread will live forever."

## Question 76

### What does it mean to eat the crucified body of Christ and to drink His shed blood?

First, to accept with a believing heart all the suffering and the death of Christ, and so receive forgiveness of sins and life eternal. [1]

Second, to be united more and more to His sacred body through the Holy Spirit, who lives both in Christ and in us. [2]

Therefore, although Christ is in heaven [3] and we are on earth, yet we are flesh of His flesh and bone of His bones, [4]

and we forever live and are governed by one Spirit, as the members of our body are by one soul. [5]

#### **John 15:1-6** [5]

##### **1. The Vine and the Branches**

"I am the true vine, and my Father is the gardener. **2.** He cuts off every branch in me that bears no fruit, while every branch that does bear fruit he prunes so that it will be even more fruitful. **3.** You are already clean because of the word I have spoken to you. **4.** Remain in me, and I will remain in you. No branch can bear fruit by itself; it must remain in the vine. Neither can you bear fruit unless you remain in me. **5.** "I am the vine; you are the branches. If a man remains in me and I in him, he will bear much fruit; apart from me you can do nothing. **6.** If anyone does not remain in me, he is like a branch that is thrown away and withers; such branches are picked up, thrown into the fire and burned.

#### **Ephesians 4:15-16** [5]

**15.** Instead, speaking the truth in love, we will in all things grow up into him who is the Head, that is, Christ. **16.** From him the whole body, joined and held together by every supporting ligament, grows and builds itself up in love, as each part does its work.

#### **1 John 3:24** [5]

**24.** Those who obey his commands live in him, and he in them. And this is how we know that he lives in us: We know it by the Spirit he gave us.

### Question 77

## **Where has Christ promised that He will nourish and refresh believers with His body and blood as surely as they eat of this broken bread and drink of this cup?**

In the institution of the Lord's supper: The Lord Jesus on the night when He was betrayed took bread, and when He had given thanks, He broke it and said, "This is my body which is for you. Do this in remembrance of me." In the same way also the cup, after supper, saying, "Do this, as often as you drink it, in remembrance of me." For as often as you eat this bread and drink the cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until He comes. [1]

This promise is repeated by Paul where he says: The cup of blessing which we bless, is it not a participation in the blood of Christ? The bread which we break, is it not a participation in the body of Christ? Because there is one bread, we who are many are one body, for we all partake of the one bread. [2]

### **1 Corinthians 11:23-26** [1]

**23.** For I received from the Lord what I also passed on to you: The Lord Jesus, on the night he was betrayed, took bread, **24.** and when he had given thanks, he broke it and said, "This is my body, which is for you; do this in remembrance of me." **25.** In the same way, after supper he took the cup, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood; do this, whenever you drink it, in remembrance of me." **26.** For whenever you eat this bread and drink this cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until he comes.

### **1 Corinthians 10:16-17** [2]

**16.** Is not the cup of thanksgiving for which we give thanks a participation in the blood of Christ? And is not the bread that we break a participation in the body of Christ? **17.** Because there is one loaf, we, who are many, are one body, for we all partake of the one loaf.

## Question 78

### Are then the bread and wine changed into the real body and blood of Christ?

No. Just as the water of baptism is not changed into the blood of Christ and is not the washing away of sins itself but is simply God's sign and pledge, [1]

so also the bread in the Lord's supper does not become the body of Christ itself, [2] although it is called Christ's body [3]

in keeping with the nature and usage of sacraments. [4]

#### **Ephesians 5:26** [1]

26. to make her holy, cleansing her by the washing with water through the word,

#### **Titus 3:5** [1]

5. he saved us, not because of righteous things we had done, but because of his mercy. He saved us through the washing of rebirth and renewal by the Holy Spirit,

#### **Matthew 26:26-29** [2]

26. While they were eating, Jesus took bread, gave thanks and broke it, and gave it to his disciples, saying, "Take and eat; this is my body." 27. Then he took the cup, gave thanks and offered it to them, saying, "Drink from it, all of you. 28. This is my blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many for the forgiveness of sins. 29. I tell you, I will not drink of this fruit of the vine from now on until that day when I drink it anew with you in my Father's kingdom."

#### **1 Corinthians 10:16-17** [3]

16. Is not the cup of thanksgiving for which we give thanks a participation in the blood of Christ? And is not the bread that we break a participation in the body of Christ? 17. Because there is one loaf, we, who are many, are one body, for we all partake of the one loaf.

#### **1 Corinthians 11:26-28** [3]

26. For whenever you eat this bread and drink this cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until he comes. 27. Therefore, whoever eats the bread or drinks the cup of the Lord in an unworthy manner will be guilty of sinning against the body and blood of the Lord. 28. A man ought to examine himself before he eats of the bread and drinks of the cup.

#### **Genesis 17:10-11** [4]

10. This is my covenant with you and your descendants after you, the covenant you are to keep: Every male among you shall be circumcised. 11. You are to undergo circumcision, and it will be the sign of the covenant between me and you.

## Question 78

### **Are then the bread and wine changed into the real body and blood of Christ?**

No. Just as the water of baptism is not changed into the blood of Christ and is not the washing away of sins itself but is simply God's sign and pledge, [1]

so also the bread in the Lord's supper does not become the body of Christ itself, [2] although it is called Christ's body [3] in keeping with the nature and usage of sacraments. [4]

#### **Exodus 12:11** [4]

11. This is how you are to eat it: with your cloak tucked into your belt, your sandals on your feet and your staff in your hand. Eat it in haste; it is the Lord's Passover.

#### **Exodus 12:13** [4]

13. The blood will be a sign for you on the houses where you are; and when I see the blood, I will pass over you. No destructive plague will touch you when I strike Egypt.

#### **1 Corinthians 10:3-4** [4]

3. They all ate the same spiritual food 4. and drank the same spiritual drink; for they drank from the spiritual rock that accompanied them, and that rock was Christ.

#### **1 Peter 3:21** [4]

21. and this water symbolizes baptism that now saves you also—not the removal of dirt from the body but the pledge of a good conscience toward God. It saves you by the resurrection of Jesus Christ,

## Question 79

# **Why then does Christ call the bread His body and the cup His blood, or the new covenant in His blood, and why does Paul speak of a participation in the body and blood of Christ?**

Christ speaks in this way for a good reason: He wants to teach us by His supper that as bread and wine sustain us in this temporal life, so His crucified body and shed blood are true food and drink for our souls to eternal life. [1]

But, even more important, He wants to assure us by this visible sign and pledge, first, that through the working of the Holy Spirit we share in His true body and blood as surely as we receive with our mouth these holy signs in remembrance of Him, [2]

and, second, that all His suffering and obedience are as certainly ours as if we personally had suffered and paid for our sins. [3]

### **John 6:51** [1]

51. I am the living bread that came down from heaven. If anyone eats of this bread, he will live forever. This bread is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world."

### **John 6:55** [1]

55. For my flesh is real food and my blood is real drink.

### **1 Corinthians 10:16-17** [2]

16. Is not the cup of thanksgiving for which we give thanks a participation in the blood of Christ? And is not the bread that we break a participation in the body of Christ? 17. Because there is one loaf, we, who are many, are one body, for we all partake of the one loaf.

### **1 Corinthians 11:26** [2]

26. For whenever you eat this bread and drink this cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until he comes.

### **Romans 6:5-11** [3]

5. If we have been united with him like this in his death, we will certainly also be united with him in his resurrection. 6. For we know that our old self was crucified with him so that the body of sin might be done away with, that we should no longer be slaves to sin— 7. because anyone who has died has been freed from sin. 8. Now if we died with Christ, we believe that we will also live with him. 9. For we know that since Christ was raised from the dead, he cannot die again; death no longer has mastery over him. 10. The death he died, he died to sin once for all; but the life he lives, he lives to God. 11. In the same way, count yourselves dead to sin but alive to God in Christ Jesus.

## Question 80

### What difference is there between the Lord's supper and the papal mass?

The Lord's supper testifies to us, first, that we have complete forgiveness of all our sins through the one sacrifice of Jesus Christ, which He Himself accomplished on the cross once for all; [1]

and, second, that through the Holy Spirit we are grafted into Christ, [2]

who with His true body is now in heaven at the right hand of the Father, [3] and this is where He wants to be worshipped. [4]

But the mass teaches, first, that the living and the dead do not have forgiveness of sins through the suffering of Christ unless He is still offered for them daily by the priests; and, second, that Christ is bodily present in the form of bread and wine, and there is to be worshipped.

Therefore the mass is basically nothing but a denial of the one sacrifice and suffering of Jesus Christ, and an accursed idolatry. [5]

#### **Matthew 26:28** [1]

28. This is my blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many for the forgiveness of sins.

#### **John 19:30** [1]

30. When he had received the drink, Jesus said, "It is finished." With that, he bowed his head and gave up his spirit.

#### **Hebrews 7:27** [1]

27. Unlike the other high priests, he does not need to offer sacrifices day after day, first for his own sins, and then for the sins of the people. He sacrificed for their sins once for all when he offered himself.

#### **Hebrews 9:12** [1]

12. He did not enter by means of the blood of goats and calves; but he entered the Most Holy Place once for all by his own blood, having obtained eternal redemption.

#### **Hebrews 9:25-26** [1]

25. Nor did he enter heaven to offer himself again and again, the way the high priest enters the Most Holy Place every year with blood that is not his own. 26. Then Christ would have had to suffer many times since the creation of the world. But now he has appeared once for all at the end of the ages to do away with sin by the sacrifice of himself.

## Question 80

### What difference is there between the Lord's supper and the papal mass?

The Lord's supper testifies to us, first, that we have complete forgiveness of all our sins through the one sacrifice of Jesus Christ, which He Himself accomplished on the cross once for all; [1]

and, second, that through the Holy Spirit we are grafted into Christ, [2]

who with His true body is now in heaven at the right hand of the Father, [3] and this is where He wants to be worshipped. [4]

But the mass teaches, first, that the living and the dead do not have forgiveness of sins through the suffering of Christ unless He is still offered for them daily by the priests; and, second, that Christ is bodily present in the form of bread and wine, and there is to be worshipped. Therefore the mass is basically nothing but a denial of the one sacrifice and suffering of Jesus Christ, and an accursed idolatry. [5]

#### Hebrews 10:10-18 [1]

10. And by that will, we have been made holy through the sacrifice of the body of Jesus Christ once for all. 11. Day after day every priest stands and performs his religious duties; again and again he offers the same sacrifices, which can never take away sins. 12. But when this priest had offered for all time one sacrifice for sins, he sat down at the right hand of God. 13. Since that time he waits for his enemies to be made his footstool, 14. because by one sacrifice he has made perfect forever those who are being made holy. 15. The Holy Spirit also testifies to us about this. First he says: 16. "This is the covenant I will make with them after that time, says the Lord.

I will put my laws in their hearts,

and I will write them on their minds." 17. Then he adds:

"Their sins and lawless acts

I will remember no more." 18. And where these have been forgiven, there is no longer any sacrifice for sin.

#### 1 Corinthians 6:17 [2]

17. But he who unites himself with the Lord is one with him in spirit.

#### 1 Corinthians 10:16-17 [2]

16. Is not the cup of thanksgiving for which we give thanks a participation in the blood of Christ? And is not the bread that we break a participation in the body of Christ? 17. Because there is one loaf, we, who are many, are one body, for we all partake of the one loaf.

#### John 20:17 [3]

17. Jesus said, "Do not hold on to me, for I have not yet returned to the Father. Go instead to my brothers and tell them, 'I am returning to my Father and your Father, to my God and your God.'"



## Question 80

### What difference is there between the Lord's supper and the papal mass?

The Lord's supper testifies to us, first, that we have complete forgiveness of all our sins through the one sacrifice of Jesus Christ, which He Himself accomplished on the cross once for all; [1]

and, second, that through the Holy Spirit we are grafted into Christ, [2]

who with His true body is now in heaven at the right hand of the Father, [3] and this is where He wants to be worshipped. [4]

But the mass teaches, first, that the living and the dead do not have forgiveness of sins through the suffering of Christ unless He is still offered for them daily by the priests; and, second, that Christ is bodily present in the form of bread and wine, and there is to be worshipped.

Therefore the mass is basically nothing but a denial of the one sacrifice and suffering of Jesus Christ, and an accursed idolatry. [5]

#### **Acts 7:55-56** [3]

55. But Stephen, full of the Holy Spirit, looked up to heaven and saw the glory of God, and Jesus standing at the right hand of God.

56. "Look," he said, "I see heaven open and the Son of Man standing at the right hand of God."

#### **Hebrews 1:3** [3]

3. The Son is the radiance of God's glory and the exact representation of his being, sustaining all things by his powerful word. After he had provided purification for sins, he sat down at the right hand of the Majesty in heaven.

#### **Hebrews 8:1** [3]

1. The High Priest of a New Covenant

The point of what we are saying is this: We do have such a high priest, who sat down at the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in heaven,

#### **John 4:21-24** [4]

21. Jesus declared, "Believe me, woman, a time is coming when you will worship the Father neither on this mountain nor in Jerusalem. 22. You Samaritans worship what you do not know; we worship what we do know, for salvation is from the Jews. 23. Yet a time is coming and has now come when the true worshipers will worship the Father in spirit and truth, for they are the kind of worshipers the Father seeks. 24. God is spirit, and his worshipers must worship in spirit and in truth."

#### **Philippians 3:20** [4]

20. But our citizenship is in heaven. And we eagerly await a Savior from there, the Lord Jesus Christ,

#### **Colossians 3:1** [4]

1. Rules for Holy Living

Since, then, you have been raised with Christ, set your hearts on things above, where Christ is seated at the right hand of God.

## Question 80

### **What difference is there between the Lord's supper and the papal mass?**

The Lord's supper testifies to us, first, that we have complete forgiveness of all our sins through the one sacrifice of Jesus Christ, which He Himself accomplished on the cross once for all; [1]

and, second, that through the Holy Spirit we are grafted into Christ, [2]

who with His true body is now in heaven at the right hand of the Father, [3] and this is where He wants to be worshipped. [4]

But the mass teaches, first, that the living and the dead do not have forgiveness of sins through the suffering of Christ unless He is still offered for them daily by the priests; and, second, that Christ is bodily present in the form of bread and wine, and there is to be worshipped.

Therefore the mass is basically nothing but a denial of the one sacrifice and suffering of Jesus Christ, and an accursed idolatry. [5]

#### **1 Thessalonians 1:10** [4]

10. and to wait for his Son from heaven, whom he raised from the dead—Jesus, who rescues us from the coming wrath.

## Question 81

### Who are to come to the table of the Lord?

Those who are truly displeased with themselves because of their sins and yet trust that these are forgiven them and that their remaining weakness is covered by the suffering and death of Christ, and who also desire more and more to strengthen their faith and amend their life. But hypocrites and those who do not repent eat and drink judgment upon themselves. [1]

#### **1 Corinthians 10:19-22** [1]

**19.** Do I mean then that a sacrifice offered to an idol is anything, or that an idol is anything? **20.** No, but the sacrifices of pagans are offered to demons, not to God, and I do not want you to be participants with demons. **21.** You cannot drink the cup of the Lord and the cup of demons too; you cannot have a part in both the Lord's table and the table of demons. **22.** Are we trying to arouse the Lord's jealousy? Are we stronger than he?

#### **1 Corinthians 11:26-32** [1]

**26.** For whenever you eat this bread and drink this cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until he comes. **27.** Therefore, whoever eats the bread or drinks the cup of the Lord in an unworthy manner will be guilty of sinning against the body and blood of the Lord. **28.** A man ought to examine himself before he eats of the bread and drinks of the cup. **29.** For anyone who eats and drinks without recognizing the body of the Lord eats and drinks judgment on himself. **30.** That is why many among you are weak and sick, and a number of you have fallen asleep. **31.** But if we judged ourselves, we would not come under judgment. **32.** When we are judged by the Lord, we are being disciplined so that we will not be condemned with the world.

## Question 82

**Are those also to be admitted to the Lord's supper who by their confession and life show that they are unbelieving and ungodly?**

No, for then the covenant of God would be profaned and His wrath kindled against the whole congregation. [1]

Therefore, according to the command of Christ and His apostles, the Christian church is duty-bound to exclude such persons by the keys of the kingdom of heaven, until they amend their lives. [2]

**Psalms 50:16** [1]

16. But to the wicked, God says:

"What right have you to recite my laws  
or take my covenant on your lips?"

**Isaiah 1:11-17** [1]

### Question 82

**Are those also to be admitted to the Lord's supper who by their confession and life show that they are unbelieving and ungodly?**

No, for then the covenant of God would be profaned and His wrath kindled against the whole congregation. [1]

Therefore, according to the command of Christ and His apostles, the Christian church is duty-bound to exclude such persons by the keys of the kingdom of heaven, until they amend their lives. [2]

**1 Corinthians 11:17-34** [1]

### Question 83

## What are the keys of the kingdom of heaven?

The preaching of the holy gospel and church discipline. By these two the kingdom of heaven is opened to believers and closed to unbelievers.  
[1]

### **Matthew 16:19** [1]

19. I will give you the keys of the kingdom of heaven; whatever you bind on earth will be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth will be loosed in heaven."

### **John 20:21-23** [1]

21. Again Jesus said, "Peace be with you! As the Father has sent me, I am sending you." 22. And with that he breathed on them and said, "Receive the Holy Spirit. 23. If you forgive anyone his sins, they are forgiven; if you do not forgive them, they are not forgiven."

## Question 84

### How is the kingdom of heaven opened and closed by the preaching of the gospel?

According to the command of Christ, the kingdom of heaven is opened when it is proclaimed and publicly testified to each and every believer that God has really forgiven all their sins for the sake of Christ's merits, as often as they by true faith accept the promise of the gospel. The kingdom of heaven is closed when it is proclaimed and testified to all unbelievers and hypocrites that the wrath of God and eternal condemnation rest on them as long as they do not repent. According to this testimony of the gospel, God will judge both in this life and in the life to come. [1]

#### **Matthew 16:19** [1]

19. I will give you the keys of the kingdom of heaven; whatever you bind on earth will be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth will be loosed in heaven."

#### **John 3:31-36** [1]

31. "The one who comes from above is above all; the one who is from the earth belongs to the earth, and speaks as one from the earth. The one who comes from heaven is above all. 32. He testifies to what he has seen and heard, but no one accepts his testimony. 33. The man who has accepted it has certified that God is truthful. 34. For the one whom God has sent speaks the words of God, for God gives the Spirit without limit. 35. The Father loves the Son and has placed everything in his hands. 36. Whoever believes in the Son has eternal life, but whoever rejects the Son will not see life, for God's wrath remains on him."

#### **John 20:21-23** [1]

21. Again Jesus said, "Peace be with you! As the Father has sent me, I am sending you." 22. And with that he breathed on them and said, "Receive the Holy Spirit. 23. If you forgive anyone his sins, they are forgiven; if you do not forgive them, they are not forgiven."

## Question 85

### How is the kingdom of heaven closed and opened by church discipline?

According to the command of Christ, people who call themselves Christians but show themselves to be unchristian in doctrine or life are first repeatedly admonished in a brotherly manner. If they do not give up their errors or wickedness, they are reported to the church, that is, to the elders. If they do not heed also their admonitions, they are forbidden the use of the sacraments, and they are excluded by the elders from the Christian congregation, and by God Himself from the kingdom of Christ. [1]

They are again received as members of Christ and of the church when they promise and show real amendment. [2]

#### **Matthew 18:15-20** [1]

##### **15. A Brother Who Sins Against You**

"If your brother sins against you, go and show him his fault, just between the two of you. If he listens to you, you have won your brother over. **16.** But if he will not listen, take one or two others along, so that 'every matter may be established by the testimony of two or three witnesses.' **17.** If he refuses to listen to them, tell it to the church; and if he refuses to listen even to the church, treat him as you would a pagan or a tax collector. **18.** 'I tell you the truth, whatever you bind on earth will be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth will be loosed in heaven. **19.** 'Again, I tell you that if two of you on earth agree about anything you ask for, it will be done for you by my Father in heaven. **20.** For where two or three come together in my name, there am I with them."

#### **1 Corinthians 5:3-5** [1]

**3.** Even though I am not physically present, I am with you in spirit. And I have already passed judgment on the one who did this, just as if I were present. **4.** When you are assembled in the name of our Lord Jesus and I am with you in spirit, and the power of our Lord Jesus is present, **5.** hand this man over to Satan, so that the sinful nature may be destroyed and his spirit saved on the day of the Lord.

#### **1 Corinthians 15:11-13** [1]

**11.** Whether, then, it was I or they, this is what we preach, and this is what you believed. **12.** The Resurrection of the Dead  
But if it is preached that Christ has been raised from the dead, how can some of you say that there is no resurrection of the dead? **13.** If there is no resurrection of the dead, then not even Christ has been raised.



## Question 85

### How is the kingdom of heaven closed and opened by church discipline?

According to the command of Christ, people who call themselves Christians but show themselves to be unchristian in doctrine or life are first repeatedly admonished in a brotherly manner. If they do not give up their errors or wickedness, they are reported to the church, that is, to the elders. If they do not heed also their admonitions, they are forbidden the use of the sacraments, and they are excluded by the elders from the Christian congregation, and by God Himself from the kingdom of Christ. [1]

They are again received as members of Christ and of the church when they promise and show real amendment. [2]

#### **2 Thessalonians 3:14-15** [1]

**14.** If anyone does not obey our instruction in this letter, take special note of him. Do not associate with him, in order that he may feel ashamed. **15.** Yet do not regard him as an enemy, but warn him as a brother.

#### **Luke 15:20-24** [2]

**20.** So he got up and went to his father. "But while he was still a long way off, his father saw him and was filled with compassion for him; he ran to his son, threw his arms around him and kissed him. **21.** "The son said to him, 'Father, I have sinned against heaven and against you. I am no longer worthy to be called your son.' **22.** "But the father said to his servants, 'Quick! Bring the best robe and put it on him. Put a ring on his finger and sandals on his feet. **23.** Bring the fattened calf and kill it. Let's have a feast and celebrate. **24.** For this son of mine was dead and is alive again; he was lost and is found.' So they began to celebrate.

#### **2 Corinthians 2:6-11** [2]

**6.** The punishment inflicted on him by the majority is sufficient for him. **7.** Now instead, you ought to forgive and comfort him, so that he will not be overwhelmed by excessive sorrow. **8.** I urge you, therefore, to reaffirm your love for him. **9.** The reason I wrote you was to see if you would stand the test and be obedient in everything. **10.** If you forgive anyone, I also forgive him. And what I have forgiven—if there was anything to forgive—I have forgiven in the sight of Christ for your sake, **11.** in order that Satan might not outwit us. For we are not unaware of his schemes.

## Question 86

**Since we have been delivered from our misery by grace alone through Christ, without any merit of our own, why must we yet do good works?**

Because Christ, having redeemed us by His blood, also renews us by His Holy Spirit to be His image, so that with our whole life we may show ourselves thankful to God for His benefits, [1]  
and He may be praised by us. [2] Further, that we ourselves may be assured of our faith by its fruits, [3]  
and that by our godly walk of life we may win our neighbours for Christ. [4]

### **Romans 6:13** [1]

13. Do not offer the parts of your body to sin, as instruments of wickedness, but rather offer yourselves to God, as those who have been brought from death to life; and offer the parts of your body to him as instruments of righteousness.

### **1 Peter 2:5-10** [1]

### **Romans 12:1-2** [1]

#### 1. Living Sacrifices

Therefore, I urge you, brothers, in view of God's mercy, to offer your bodies as living sacrifices, holy and pleasing to God—this is your spiritual act of worship. 2. Do not conform any longer to the pattern of this world, but be transformed by the renewing of your mind. Then you will be able to test and approve what God's will is—his good, pleasing and perfect will.

## Question 86

# Since we have been delivered from our misery by grace alone through Christ, without any merit of our own, why must we yet do good works?

Because Christ, having redeemed us by His blood, also renews us by His Holy Spirit to be His image, so that with our whole life we may show ourselves thankful to God for His benefits, [1]  
and He may be praised by us. [2] Further, that we ourselves may be assured of our faith by its fruits, [3]  
and that by our godly walk of life we may win our neighbours for Christ. [4]

### **Matthew 5:16** [2]

**16.** In the same way, let your light shine before men, that they may see your good deeds and praise your Father in heaven.

### **1 Corinthians 6:19-20** [2]

**19.** Do you not know that your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit, who is in you, whom you have received from God? You are not your own; **20.** you were bought at a price. Therefore honor God with your body.

### **Matthew 7:17-18** [3]

**17.** Likewise every good tree bears good fruit, but a bad tree bears bad fruit. **18.** A good tree cannot bear bad fruit, and a bad tree cannot bear good fruit.

### **Galatians 5:22-24** [3]

**22.** But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, **23.** gentleness and self-control. Against such things there is no law. **24.** Those who belong to Christ Jesus have crucified the sinful nature with its passions and desires.

### **2 Peter 1:10-11** [3]

**10.** Therefore, my brothers, be all the more eager to make your calling and election sure. For if you do these things, you will never fall, **11.** and you will receive a rich welcome into the eternal kingdom of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ.

### **Matthew 5:14-16** [4]

**14.** "You are the light of the world. A city on a hill cannot be hidden. **15.** Neither do people light a lamp and put it under a bowl. Instead they put it on its stand, and it gives light to everyone in the house. **16.** In the same way, let your light shine before men, that they may see your good deeds and praise your Father in heaven.

## Question 86

**Since we have been delivered from our misery by grace alone through Christ, without any merit of our own, why must we yet do good works?**

Because Christ, having redeemed us by His blood, also renews us by His Holy Spirit to be His image, so that with our whole life we may show ourselves thankful to God for His benefits, [1]  
and He may be praised by us. [2] Further, that we ourselves may be assured of our faith by its fruits, [3]  
and that by our godly walk of life we may win our neighbours for Christ. [4]

### **Romans 14:17-19** [4]

17. For the kingdom of God is not a matter of eating and drinking, but of righteousness, peace and joy in the Holy Spirit, 18. because anyone who serves Christ in this way is pleasing to God and approved by men. 19. Let us therefore make every effort to do what leads to peace and to mutual edification.

### **1 Peter 2:12** [4]

12. Live such good lives among the pagans that, though they accuse you of doing wrong, they may see your good deeds and glorify God on the day he visits us.

### **1 Peter 3:1-2** [4]

#### 1. Wives and Husbands

Wives, in the same way be submissive to your husbands so that, if any of them do not believe the word, they may be won over without words by the behavior of their wives, 2. when they see the purity and reverence of your lives.

## Question 87

# Can those be saved who do not turn to God from their ungrateful and impenitent walk of life?

By no means. Scripture says that no unchaste person, idolater, adulterer, thief, greedy person, drunkard, slanderer, robber, or the like shall inherit the kingdom of God. [1]

### **1 Corinthians 6:9-10** [1]

9. Do you not know that the wicked will not inherit the kingdom of God? Do not be deceived: Neither the sexually immoral nor idolaters nor adulterers nor male prostitutes nor homosexual offenders 10. nor thieves nor the greedy nor drunkards nor slanderers nor swindlers will inherit the kingdom of God.

### **Galatians 5:19-21** [1]

19. The acts of the sinful nature are obvious: sexual immorality, impurity and debauchery; 20. idolatry and witchcraft; hatred, discord, jealousy, fits of rage, selfish ambition, dissensions, factions 21. and envy; drunkenness, orgies, and the like. I warn you, as I did before, that those who live like this will not inherit the kingdom of God.

### **Ephesians 5:5-6** [1]

5. For of this you can be sure: No immoral, impure or greedy person—such a man is an idolater—has any inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and of God. 6. Let no one deceive you with empty words, for because of such things God's wrath comes on those who are disobedient.

### **1 John 3:14** [1]

14. We know that we have passed from death to life, because we love our brothers. Anyone who does not love remains in death.

## Question 88

# What is the true repentance or conversion of man?

It is the dying of the old nature and the coming to life of the new. [1]

### **Romans 6:1-11** [1]

1. Dead to Sin, Alive in Christ

What shall we say, then? Shall we go on sinning so that grace may increase? 2. By no means! We died to sin; how can we live in it any longer? 3. Or don't you know that all of us who were baptized into Christ Jesus were baptized into his death? 4. We were therefore buried with him through baptism into death in order that, just as Christ was raised from the dead through the glory of the Father, we too may live a new life. 5. If we have been united with him like this in his death, we will certainly also be united with him in his resurrection. 6. For we know that our old self was crucified with him so that the body of sin might be done away with, that we should no longer be slaves to sin— 7. because anyone who has died has been freed from sin. 8. Now if we died with Christ, we believe that we will also live with him. 9. For we know that since Christ was raised from the dead, he cannot die again; death no longer has mastery over him. 10. The death he died, he died to sin once for all; but the life he lives, he lives to God. 11. In the same way, count yourselves dead to sin but alive to God in Christ Jesus.

### **1 Corinthians 5:7** [1]

7. Get rid of the old yeast that you may be a new batch without yeast—as you really are. For Christ, our Passover lamb, has been sacrificed.

### **2 Corinthians 5:17** [1]

17. Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation; the old has gone, the new has come!

### **Ephesians 4:22-24** [1]

22. You were taught, with regard to your former way of life, to put off your old self, which is being corrupted by its deceitful desires; 23. to be made new in the attitude of your minds; 24. and to put on the new self, created to be like God in true righteousness and holiness.

### **Colossians 3:5-10** [1]

5. Put to death, therefore, whatever belongs to your earthly nature: sexual immorality, impurity, lust, evil desires and greed, which is idolatry. 6. Because of these, the wrath of God is coming. 7. You used to walk in these ways, in the life you once lived. 8. But now you must rid yourselves of all such things as these: anger, rage, malice, slander, and filthy language from your lips. 9. Do not lie to each other, since you have taken off your old self with its practices 10. and have put on the new self, which is being renewed in knowledge in the image of its Creator.

## Question 89

### What is the dying of the old nature?

It is to grieve with heartfelt sorrow that we have offended God by our sin, and more and more to hate it and flee from it. [1]

#### **Psalm 51:3-4** [1]

3. For I know my transgressions,  
and my sin is always before me. 4. Against you, you only, have I  
sinned  
and done what is evil in your sight,  
so that you are proved right when you speak  
and justified when you judge.

#### **Psalm 51:17** [1]

17. The sacrifices of God are a broken spirit;  
a broken and contrite heart,  
O God, you will not despise.

#### **Joel 2:12-13** [1]

12. Rend Your Heart  
“Even now,” declares the Lord,  
“return to me with all your heart,  
with fasting and weeping and mourning.” 13. Rend your heart  
and not your garments.  
Return to the Lord your God,  
for he is gracious and compassionate,  
slow to anger and abounding in love,  
and he relents from sending calamity.

#### **Romans 8:12-13** [1]

12. Therefore, brothers, we have an obligation—but it is not to the  
sinful nature, to live according to it. 13. For if you live according to  
the sinful nature, you will die; but if by the Spirit you put to death  
the misdeeds of the body, you will live,

#### **2 Corinthians 7:10** [1]

10. Godly sorrow brings repentance that leads to salvation and  
leaves no regret, but worldly sorrow brings death.

## Question 90

### What is the coming to life of the new nature?

It is a heartfelt joy in God through Christ, [1] and a love and delight to live according to the will of God in all good works. [2]

#### **Psalms 51:8** [1]

8. Let me hear joy and gladness;  
let the bones you have crushed rejoice.

#### **Psalms 51:12** [1]

12. Restore to me the joy of your salvation  
and grant me a willing spirit, to sustain me.

#### **Isaiah 57:15** [1]

15. For this is what the high and lofty One says—  
he who lives forever, whose name is holy:  
“I live in a high and holy place,  
but also with him who is contrite and lowly in spirit,  
to revive the spirit of the lowly  
and to revive the heart of the contrite.

#### **Romans 5:1** [1]

1. Peace and Joy  
Therefore, since we have been justified through faith, we have  
peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ,

#### **Romans 14:17** [1]

17. For the kingdom of God is not a matter of eating and drinking,  
but of righteousness, peace and joy in the Holy Spirit,

#### **Romans 6:10-11** [2]

10. The death he died, he died to sin once for all; but the life he  
lives, he lives to God. 11. In the same way, count yourselves dead  
to sin but alive to God in Christ Jesus.

#### **Galatians 2:20** [2]

20. I have been crucified with Christ and I no longer live, but Christ  
lives in me. The life I live in the body, I live by faith in the Son of  
God, who loved me and gave himself for me.



## Question 91

### But what are good works?

Only those which are done out of true faith, [1] in accordance with the law of God, [2] and to His glory, [3] and not those based on our own opinion or on precepts of men. [4]

#### **John 15:5** [1]

5. "I am the vine; you are the branches. If a man remains in me and I in him, he will bear much fruit; apart from me you can do nothing.

#### **Romans 14:23** [1]

23. But the man who has doubts is condemned if he eats, because his eating is not from faith; and everything that does not come from faith is sin.

#### **Hebrews 11:6** [1]

6. And without faith it is impossible to please God, because anyone who comes to him must believe that he exists and that he rewards those who earnestly seek him.

#### **Leviticus 18:4** [2]

4. You must obey my laws and be careful to follow my decrees. I am the Lord your God.

#### **1 Samuel 15:22** [2]

22. But Samuel replied:

"Does the Lord delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices as much as in obeying the voice of the Lord?  
To obey is better than sacrifice,  
and to heed is better than the fat of rams.

#### **Ephesians 2:10** [2]

10. For we are God's workmanship, created in Christ Jesus to do good works, which God prepared in advance for us to do.

#### **1 Corinthians 10:31** [3]

31. So whether you eat or drink or whatever you do, do it all for the glory of God.

#### **Deuteronomy 12:32** [4]

32. See that you do all I command you; do not add to it or take away from it.

## Question 91

### But what are good works?

Only those which are done out of true faith, [1] in accordance with the law of God, [2] and to His glory, [3] and not those based on our own opinion or on precepts of men. [4]

#### **Isaiah 29:13** [4]

13. The Lord says:

"These people come near to me with their mouth  
and honor me with their lips,  
but their hearts are far from me.  
Their worship of me  
is made up only of rules taught by men.

#### **Ezekiel 20:18-19** [4]

18. I said to their children in the desert, "Do not follow the statutes of your fathers or keep their laws or defile yourselves with their idols. 19. I am the Lord your God; follow my decrees and be careful to keep my laws.

#### **Matthew 15:7-9** [4]

7. You hypocrites! Isaiah was right when he prophesied about you:

8. "These people honor me with their lips,  
but their hearts are far from me. 9. They worship me in vain;  
their teachings are but rules taught by men."

## Question 92

### What is the law of the LORD?

God spoke all these words, saying: I am the LORD your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage. 1. You shall have no other gods before Me. 2. You shall not make for yourself a graven image, 2. or any likeness of anything that is in heaven above, 2. or that is in the earth beneath, 2. or that is in the water under the earth; 2. you shall not bow down to them or serve them; 2. for I the LORD your God am a jealous God, 2. visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children 2. to the third and fourth generation 2. of those who hate Me, 2. but showing steadfast love to thousands of those 2. who love Me and keep My commandments. 3. You shall not take the Name of the LORD your God 3. in vain; 3. for the LORD will not hold him guiltless 3. who takes His Name in vain. 4. Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy. 4. Six days you shall labour, and do all your work; 4. but the seventh day is a sabbath to the LORD your 4. God; 4. in it you shall not do any work, 4. you, or your son, or your daughter, 4. your manservant, or your maidservant, 4. or your cattle, 4. or the sojourner who is within your gates; 4. for in six days the LORD made heaven and earth, 4. the sea, and all that is in them, 4. and rested the seventh day; 4. therefore the LORD blessed the sabbath day 4. and hallowed it. 5. Honour your father and your mother, 5. that your days may be long 5. in the land which the LORD your God gives you. 6. You shall not kill. 7. You shall not commit adultery. 8. You shall not steal. 9. You shall not bear false witness against your neighbour. 10. you shall not covet your neighbour's house; 10. you shall not covet your neighbour's wife, 10. or his manservant, or his maidservant, 10. or his ox, or his ass, 10. or anything that is your neighbour's. [1]

**Exodus 20:1-17** [1]

**Deuteronomy 5:6-21** [1]

### Question 93

## How are these commandments divided?

Into two parts. The first teaches us how to live in relation to God; the second, what duties we owe our neighbour. [1]

### **Matthew 22:37-40** [1]

**37.** Jesus replied: "Love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind.' **38.** This is the first and greatest commandment. **39.** And the second is like it: 'Love your neighbor as yourself.' **40.** All the Law and the Prophets hang on these two commandments."

## Question 94

### What does the LORD require in the first commandment?

That for the sake of my very salvation I avoid and flee all idolatry, [1] witchcraft, superstition, [2] and prayer to saints or to other creatures. [3] Further, that I rightly come to know the only true God. [4] trust in Him alone, [5] submit to Him with all humility [6] and patience, [7] expect all good from Him only, [8] and love, [9] fear, [10] and honour Him [11] with all my heart. In short, that I forsake all creatures rather than do the least thing against His will. [12]

#### **1 Corinthians 6:9-10** [1]

**9.** Do you not know that the wicked will not inherit the kingdom of God? Do not be deceived: Neither the sexually immoral nor idolaters nor adulterers nor male prostitutes nor homosexual offenders **10.** nor thieves nor the greedy nor drunkards nor slanderers nor swindlers will inherit the kingdom of God.

#### **1 Corinthians 10:5-14** [1]

**5.** Nevertheless, God was not pleased with most of them; their bodies were scattered over the desert. **6.** Now these things occurred as examples to keep us from setting our hearts on evil things as they did. **7.** Do not be idolaters, as some of them were; as it is written: "The people sat down to eat and drink and got up to indulge in pagan revelry." **8.** We should not commit sexual immorality, as some of them did—and in one day twenty-three thousand of them died. **9.** We should not test the Lord, as some of them did—and were killed by snakes. **10.** And do not grumble, as some of them did—and were killed by the destroying angel. **11.** These things happened to them as examples and were written down as warnings for us, on whom the fulfillment of the ages has come. **12.** So, if you think you are standing firm, be careful that you don't fall! **13.** No temptation has seized you except what is common to man. And God is faithful; he will not let you be tempted beyond what you can bear. But when you are tempted, he will also provide a way out so that you can stand up under it. **14.** Idol Feasts and the Lord's Supper  
Therefore, my dear friends, flee from idolatry.

## Question 94

### What does the LORD require in the first commandment?

That for the sake of my very salvation I avoid and flee all idolatry, [1] witchcraft, superstition, [2] and prayer to saints or to other creatures. [3] Further, that I rightly come to know the only true God. [4] trust in Him alone, [5] submit to Him with all humility [6] and patience, [7] expect all good from Him only, [8] and love, [9] fear, [10] and honour Him [11] with all my heart. In short, that I forsake all creatures rather than do the least thing against His will. [12]

#### **1 John 5:21** [1]

21. Dear children, keep yourselves from idols.

#### **Leviticus 19:31** [2]

31. "Do not turn to mediums or seek out spiritists, for you will be defiled by them. I am the Lord your God.

#### **Deuteronomy 18:9-12** [2]

##### **9. Detestable Practices**

When you enter the land the Lord your God is giving you, do not learn to imitate the detestable ways of the nations there. 10. Let no one be found among you who sacrifices his son or daughter in the fire, who practices divination or sorcery, interprets omens, engages in witchcraft, 11. or casts spells, or who is a medium or spiritist or who consults the dead. 12. Anyone who does these things is detestable to the Lord, and because of these detestable practices the Lord your God will drive out those nations before you.

#### **Matthew 4:10** [3]

10. Jesus said to him, "Away from me, Satan! For it is written: 'Worship the Lord your God, and serve him only.'"

#### **Revelation 19:10** [3]

10. At this I fell at his feet to worship him. But he said to me, "Do not do it! I am a fellow servant with you and with your brothers who hold to the testimony of Jesus. Worship God! For the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy."

#### **Revelation 22:8-9** [3]

8. I, John, am the one who heard and saw these things. And when I had heard and seen them, I fell down to worship at the feet of the angel who had been showing them to me. 9. But he said to me, "Do not do it! I am a fellow servant with you and with your brothers the prophets and of all who keep the words of this book. Worship God!"

#### **John 17:3** [4]

3. Now this is eternal life: that they may know you, the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom you have sent.

## Question 94

### What does the LORD require in the first commandment?

That for the sake of my very salvation I avoid and flee all idolatry, [1] witchcraft, superstition, [2] and prayer to saints or to other creatures. [3] Further, that I rightly come to know the only true God. [4] trust in Him alone, [5] submit to Him with all humility [6] and patience, [7] expect all good from Him only, [8] and love, [9] fear, [10] and honour Him [11] with all my heart. In short, that I forsake all creatures rather than do the least thing against His will. [12]

#### **Jeremiah 17:5** [5]

5. This is what the Lord says:

“Cursed is the one who trusts in man,  
who depends on flesh for his strength  
and whose heart turns away from the Lord.

#### **Jeremiah 17:7** [5]

7. “But blessed is the man who trusts in the Lord,  
whose confidence is in him.

#### **1 Peter 5:5-6** [6]

5. Young men, in the same way be submissive to those who are older. All of you, clothe yourselves with humility toward one another, because,  
“God opposes the proud  
but gives grace to the humble.” 6. Humble yourselves, therefore, under God’s mighty hand, that he may lift you up in due time.

#### **Romans 5:3-4** [7]

3. Not only so, but we also rejoice in our sufferings, because we know that suffering produces perseverance; 4. perseverance, character; and character, hope.

#### **1 Corinthians 10:10** [7]

10. And do not grumble, as some of them did—and were killed by the destroying angel.

#### **Philippians 2:14** [7]

14. Do everything without complaining or arguing,

#### **Colossians 1:11** [7]

11. being strengthened with all power according to his glorious might so that you may have great endurance and patience, and joyfully

#### **Hebrews 10:36** [7]

36. You need to persevere so that when you have done the will of God, you will receive what he has promised.

## Question 94

### What does the LORD require in the first commandment?

That for the sake of my very salvation I avoid and flee all idolatry, [1] witchcraft, superstition, [2] and prayer to saints or to other creatures. [3] Further, that I rightly come to know the only true God. [4] trust in Him alone, [5] submit to Him with all humility [6] and patience, [7] expect all good from Him only, [8] and love, [9] fear, [10] and honour Him [11] with all my heart. In short, that I forsake all creatures rather than do the least thing against His will. [12]

#### **Psalms 104:27-28** [8]

27. These all look to you  
to give them their food at the proper time. 28. When you give it to  
them,  
they gather it up;  
when you open your hand,  
they are satisfied with good things.

#### **Isaiah 45:7** [8]

7. I form the light and create darkness,  
I bring prosperity and create disaster;  
I, the Lord, do all these things.

#### **James 1:17** [8]

17. Every good and perfect gift is from above, coming down from  
the Father of the heavenly lights, who does not change like  
shifting shadows.

#### **Deuteronomy 6:5** [9]

5. Love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul  
and with all your strength.

#### **Matthew 22:37** [9]

37. Jesus replied: "Love the Lord your God with all your heart and  
with all your soul and with all your mind."

#### **Deuteronomy 6:2** [10]

2. so that you, your children and their children after them may  
fear the Lord your God as long as you live by keeping all his  
decrees and commands that I give you, and so that you may enjoy  
long life.

#### **Psalms 111:10** [10]

10. The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom;  
all who follow his precepts have good understanding.  
To him belongs eternal praise.

#### **Proverbs 1:7** [10]

7. The fear of the Lord is the beginning of knowledge,  
but fools despise wisdom and discipline.



## Question 94

### What does the LORD require in the first commandment?

That for the sake of my very salvation I avoid and flee all idolatry, [1] witchcraft, superstition, [2] and prayer to saints or to other creatures. [3] Further, that I rightly come to know the only true God. [4] trust in Him alone, [5] submit to Him with all humility [6] and patience, [7] expect all good from Him only, [8] and love, [9] fear, [10] and honour Him [11] with all my heart. In short, that I forsake all creatures rather than do the least thing against His will. [12]

#### **Proverbs 9:10** [10]

10. "The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom, and knowledge of the Holy One is understanding.

#### **Matthew 10:28** [10]

28. Do not be afraid of those who kill the body but cannot kill the soul. Rather, be afraid of the One who can destroy both soul and body in hell.

#### **1 Peter 1:17** [10]

17. Since you call on a Father who judges each man's work impartially, live your lives as strangers here in reverent fear.

#### **Deuteronomy 6:13** [11]

13. Fear the Lord your God, serve him only and take your oaths in his name.

#### **Matthew 4:10** [11]

10. Jesus said to him, "Away from me, Satan! For it is written: 'Worship the Lord your God, and serve him only.'"

#### **Deuteronomy 10:20** [11]

20. Fear the Lord your God and serve him. Hold fast to him and take your oaths in his name.

#### **Matthew 5:29-30** [12]

29. If your right eye causes you to sin, gouge it out and throw it away. It is better for you to lose one part of your body than for your whole body to be thrown into hell. 30. And if your right hand causes you to sin, cut it off and throw it away. It is better for you to lose one part of your body than for your whole body to go into hell.

#### **Matthew 10:37-39** [12]

37. "Anyone who loves his father or mother more than me is not worthy of me; anyone who loves his son or daughter more than me is not worthy of me; 38. and anyone who does not take his cross and follow me is not worthy of me. 39. Whoever finds his life will lose it, and whoever loses his life for my sake will find it.

### Question 94

## What does the LORD require in the first commandment?

That for the sake of my very salvation I avoid and flee all idolatry, [1] witchcraft, superstition, [2] and prayer to saints or to other creatures. [3] Further, that I rightly come to know the only true God. [4] trust in Him alone, [5] submit to Him with all humility [6] and patience, [7] expect all good from Him only, [8] and love, [9] fear, [10] and honour Him [11] with all my heart. In short, that I forsake all creatures rather than do the least thing against His will. [12]

### **Acts 5:29** [12]

29. Peter and the other apostles replied: "We must obey God rather than men!

## Question 95

# What is idolatry?

Idolatry is having or inventing something in which to put our trust instead of, or in addition to, the only true God who has revealed Himself in His Word. [1]

### **1 Chronicles 16:26** [1]

26. For all the gods of the nations are idols,  
but the Lord made the heavens.

### **Galatians 4:8-9** [1]

8. Paul's Concern for the Galatians

Formerly, when you did not know God, you were slaves to those who by nature are not gods. 9. But now that you know God—or rather are known by God—how is it that you are turning back to those weak and miserable principles? Do you wish to be enslaved by them all over again?

### **Ephesians 5:5** [1]

5. For of this you can be sure: No immoral, impure or greedy person—such a man is an idolater—has any inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and of God.

### **Philippians 3:19** [1]

19. Their destiny is destruction, their god is their stomach, and their glory is in their shame. Their mind is on earthly things.

## Question 96

### What does God require in the second commandment?

We are not to make an image of God in any way, [1] nor to worship Him in any other manner than He has commanded in His Word. [2]

#### **Deuteronomy 4:15-19** [1]

##### **15.** Idolatry Forbidden

You saw no form of any kind the day the Lord spoke to you at Horeb out of the fire. Therefore watch yourselves very carefully, **16.** so that you do not become corrupt and make for yourselves an idol, an image of any shape, whether formed like a man or a woman, **17.** or like any animal on earth or any bird that flies in the air, **18.** or like any creature that moves along the ground or any fish in the waters below. **19.** And when you look up to the sky and see the sun, the moon and the stars—all the heavenly array—do not be enticed into bowing down to them and worshiping things the Lord your God has apportioned to all the nations under heaven.

#### **Isaiah 40:18-25** [1]

## Question 96

### What does God require in the second commandment?

We are not to make an image of God in any way, [1] nor to worship Him in any other manner than He has commanded in His Word. [2]

#### **Acts 17:29** [1]

29. "Therefore since we are God's offspring, we should not think that the divine being is like gold or silver or stone—an image made by man's design and skill.

#### **Romans 1:23** [1]

23. and exchanged the glory of the immortal God for images made to look like mortal man and birds and animals and reptiles.

#### **Leviticus 10:1-7** [2]

##### 1. The Death of Nadab and Abihu

Aaron's sons Nadab and Abihu took their censers, put fire in them and added incense; and they offered unauthorized fire before the Lord, contrary to his command. 2. So fire came out from the presence of the Lord and consumed them, and they died before the Lord. 3. Moses then said to Aaron, "This is what the Lord spoke of when he said:

"Among those who approach me  
I will show myself holy;  
in the sight of all the people  
I will be honored."

Aaron remained silent. 4. Moses summoned Mishael and Elzaphan, sons of Aaron's uncle Uzziel, and said to them, "Come here; carry your cousins outside the camp, away from the front of the sanctuary." 5. So they came and carried them, still in their tunics, outside the camp, as Moses ordered. 6. Then Moses said to Aaron and his sons Eleazar and Ithamar, "Do not let your hair become unkempt, and do not tear your clothes, or you will die and the Lord will be angry with the whole community. But your relatives, all the house of Israel, may mourn for those the Lord has destroyed by fire. 7. Do not leave the entrance to the Tent of Meeting or you will die, because the Lord's anointing oil is on you." So they did as Moses said.

## Question 96

### What does God require in the second commandment?

We are not to make an image of God in any way, [1] nor to worship Him in any other manner than He has commanded in His Word. [2]

#### **Deuteronomy 12:30** [2]

30. and after they have been destroyed before you, be careful not to be ensnared by inquiring about their gods, saying, "How do these nations serve their gods? We will do the same."

#### **1 Samuel 15:22-23** [2]

22. But Samuel replied:

"Does the Lord delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices as much as in obeying the voice of the Lord?

To obey is better than sacrifice,

and to heed is better than the fat of rams. 23. For rebellion is like the sin of divination,

and arrogance like the evil of idolatry.

Because you have rejected the word of the Lord, he has rejected you as king."

#### **Matthew 15:9** [2]

9. They worship me in vain;  
their teachings are but rules taught by men."

#### **John 4:23-24** [2]

23. Yet a time is coming and has now come when the true worshipers will worship the Father in spirit and truth, for they are the kind of worshipers the Father seeks. 24. God is spirit, and his worshipers must worship in spirit and in truth."

## Question 97

### May we then not make any image at all?

God cannot and may not be visibly portrayed in any way. Creatures may be portrayed, but God forbids us to make or have any images of them in order to worship them or to serve God through them. [1]

#### **Exodus 34:13-14** [1]

**13.** Break down their altars, smash their sacred stones and cut down their Asherah poles. **14.** Do not worship any other god, for the Lord, whose name is Jealous, is a jealous God.

#### **Exodus 34:17** [1]

**17.** “Do not make cast idols.

#### **Numbers 33:52** [1]

**52.** drive out all the inhabitants of the land before you. Destroy all their carved images and their cast idols, and demolish all their high places.

#### **2 Kings 18:4-5** [1]

**4.** He removed the high places, smashed the sacred stones and cut down the Asherah poles. He broke into pieces the bronze snake Moses had made, for up to that time the Israelites had been burning incense to it. (It was called Nehushtan.) **5.** Hezekiah trusted in the Lord, the God of Israel. There was no one like him among all the kings of Judah, either before him or after him.

#### **Isaiah 40:25** [1]

**25.** “To whom will you compare me?  
Or who is my equal?” says the Holy One.

## Question 98

### But may images not be tolerated in the churches as "books for the laity"?

No, for we should not be wiser than God. He wants His people to be taught not by means of dumb images [1]  
but by the living preaching of His Word. [2]

#### **Jeremiah 10:8** [1]

8. They are all senseless and foolish;  
they are taught by worthless wooden idols.

#### **Habakkuk 2:18-20** [1]

18. "Of what value is an idol, since a man has carved it?  
Or an image that teaches lies?  
For he who makes it trusts in his own creation;  
he makes idols that cannot speak. 19. Woe to him who says to  
wood, 'Come to life!'  
Or to lifeless stone, 'Wake up!'  
Can it give guidance?  
It is covered with gold and silver;  
there is no breath in it. 20. But the Lord is in his holy temple;  
let all the earth be silent before him."

#### **Romans 10:14-15** [2]

14. How, then, can they call on the one they have not believed in?  
And how can they believe in the one of whom they have not  
heard? And how can they hear without someone preaching to  
them? 15. And how can they preach unless they are sent? As it is  
written, "How beautiful are the feet of those who bring good  
news!"

#### **Romans 10:17** [2]

17. Consequently, faith comes from hearing the message, and the  
message is heard through the word of Christ.

#### **2 Timothy 3:16-17** [2]

16. All Scripture is God-breathed and is useful for teaching,  
rebuking, correcting and training in righteousness, 17. so that the  
man of God may be thoroughly equipped for every good work.

#### **2 Peter 1:19** [2]

19. And we have the word of the prophets made more certain, and  
you will do well to pay attention to it, as to a light shining in a dark  
place, until the day dawns and the morning star rises in your  
hearts.



## Question 99

### What is required in the third commandment?

We are not to blaspheme or to abuse the Name of God by cursing, [1] perjury, [2] or unnecessary oaths, [3] nor to share in such horrible sins by being silent bystanders. [4] In short, we must use the holy Name of God only with fear and reverence, [5] so that we may rightly confess Him, [6] call upon Him, [7] and praise Him in all our words and works. [8]

#### **Leviticus 24:10-17** [1]

##### **10. A Blasphemer Stoned**

Now the son of an Israelite mother and an Egyptian father went out among the Israelites, and a fight broke out in the camp between him and an Israelite. **11.** The son of the Israelite woman blasphemed the Name with a curse; so they brought him to Moses. (His mother's name was Shelomith, the daughter of Dibri the Danite.) **12.** They put him in custody until the will of the Lord should be made clear to them. **13.** Then the Lord said to Moses: **14.** "Take the blasphemer outside the camp. All those who heard him are to lay their hands on his head, and the entire assembly is to stone him. **15.** Say to the Israelites: 'If anyone curses his God, he will be held responsible; **16.** anyone who blasphemes the name of the Lord must be put to death. The entire assembly must stone him. Whether an alien or native-born, when he blasphemes the Name, he must be put to death. **17.** "If anyone takes the life of a human being, he must be put to death.

#### **Leviticus 19:1** [2]

##### **1. Various Laws**

The Lord said to Moses,

#### **Matthew 5:37** [3]

**37.** Simply let your 'Yes' be 'Yes,' and your 'No,' 'No'; anything beyond this comes from the evil one.

#### **James 5:12** [3]

**12.** Above all, my brothers, do not swear—not by heaven or by earth or by anything else. Let your "Yes" be yes, and your "No," no, or you will be condemned.

#### **Leviticus 5:1** [4]

**1.** "If a person sins because he does not speak up when he hears a public charge to testify regarding something he has seen or learned about, he will be held responsible.

#### **Proverbs 29:24** [4]

**24.** The accomplice of a thief is his own enemy; he is put under oath and dare not testify.

## Question 99

### What is required in the third commandment?

We are not to blaspheme or to abuse the Name of God by cursing, [1] perjury, [2] or unnecessary oaths, [3] nor to share in such horrible sins by being silent bystanders. [4] In short, we must use the holy Name of God only with fear and reverence, [5] so that we may rightly confess Him, [6] call upon Him, [7] and praise Him in all our words and works. [8]

#### **Psalm 99:1-5** [5]

1. Psalm 99

The Lord reigns,  
let the nations tremble;  
he sits enthroned between the cherubim,  
let the earth shake. 2. Great is the Lord in Zion;  
he is exalted over all the nations. 3. Let them praise your great  
and awesome name—  
he is holy. 4. The King is mighty, he loves justice—  
you have established equity;  
in Jacob you have done  
what is just and right. 5. Exalt the Lord our God  
and worship at his footstool;  
he is holy.

#### **Isaiah 45:23** [5]

23. By myself I have sworn,  
my mouth has uttered in all integrity  
a word that will not be revoked:  
Before me every knee will bow;  
by me every tongue will swear.

#### **Jeremiah 4:2** [5]

2. and if in a truthful, just and righteous way  
you swear, 'As surely as the Lord lives,'  
then the nations will be blessed by him  
and in him they will glory."

#### **Matthew 10:32-33** [6]

32. "Whoever acknowledges me before men, I will also  
acknowledge him before my Father in heaven. 33. But whoever  
disowns me before men, I will disown him before my Father in  
heaven.

#### **Romans 10:9-10** [6]

9. That if you confess with your mouth, "Jesus is Lord," and  
believe in your heart that God raised him from the dead, you will  
be saved. 10. For it is with your heart that you believe and are  
justified, and it is with your mouth that you confess and are  
saved.

## Question 99

### What is required in the third commandment?

We are not to blaspheme or to abuse the Name of God by cursing, [1] perjury, [2] or unnecessary oaths, [3] nor to share in such horrible sins by being silent bystanders. [4] In short, we must use the holy Name of God only with fear and reverence, [5] so that we may rightly confess Him, [6] call upon Him, [7] and praise Him in all our words and works. [8]

#### **Psalms 50:14-15** [7]

14. Sacrifice thank offerings to God,  
fulfill your vows to the Most High, 15. and call upon me in the day of  
trouble;  
I will deliver you, and you will honor me."

#### **1 Timothy 2:8** [7]

8. I want men everywhere to lift up holy hands in prayer, without  
anger or disputing.

#### **Romans 2:24** [8]

24. As it is written: "God's name is blasphemed among the Gentiles  
because of you."

#### **Colossians 3:17** [8]

17. And whatever you do, whether in word or deed, do it all in the  
name of the Lord Jesus, giving thanks to God the Father through  
him.

#### **1 Timothy 6:1** [8]

1. All who are under the yoke of slavery should consider their  
masters worthy of full respect, so that God's name and our  
teaching may not be slandered.

### Question 100

**Is the blaspheming of God's Name by swearing and cursing such a grievous sin that God is angry also with those who do not prevent and forbid it as much as they can?**

Certainly, [1]

for no sin is greater or provokes God's wrath more than the blaspheming of His Name. That is why He commanded it to be punished with death. [2]

#### **Leviticus 5:1** [1]

1. "If a person sins because he does not speak up when he hears a public charge to testify regarding something he has seen or learned about, he will be held responsible.

#### **Leviticus 24:16** [2]

16. anyone who blasphemes the name of the Lord must be put to death. The entire assembly must stone him. Whether an alien or native-born, when he blasphemes the Name, he must be put to death.

## Question 101

### But may we swear an oath by the Name of God in a godly manner?

Yes, when the government demands it of its subjects, or when necessity requires it, in order to maintain and promote fidelity and truth, to God's glory and for our neighbour's good. Such oath-taking is based on God's Word [1] and was therefore rightly used by saints in the Old and the New Testament. [2]

#### **Deuteronomy 6:13** [1]

13. Fear the Lord your God, serve him only and take your oaths in his name.

#### **Deuteronomy 10:20** [1]

20. Fear the Lord your God and serve him. Hold fast to him and take your oaths in his name.

#### **Jeremiah 4:1-2** [1]

1. "If you will return, O Israel, return to me," declares the Lord.  
"If you put your detestable idols out of my sight and no longer go astray, 2. and if in a truthful, just and righteous way you swear, 'As surely as the Lord lives,' then the nations will be blessed by him and in him they will glory."

#### **Hebrews 6:16** [1]

16. Men swear by someone greater than themselves, and the oath confirms what is said and puts an end to all argument.

#### **Genesis 21:24** [2]

24. Abraham said, "I swear it."

#### **Genesis 31:53** [2]

53. May the God of Abraham and the God of Nahor, the God of their father, judge between us."  
So Jacob took an oath in the name of the Fear of his father Isaac.

#### **Joshua 9:15** [2]

15. Then Joshua made a treaty of peace with them to let them live, and the leaders of the assembly ratified it by oath.

#### **1 Samuel 24:22** [2]

22. So David gave his oath to Saul. Then Saul returned home, but David and his men went up to the stronghold.

#### **1 Kings 1:29-30** [2]

29. The king then took an oath: "As surely as the Lord lives, who has delivered me out of every trouble, 30. I will surely carry out today what I swore to you by the Lord, the God of Israel: Solomon your son shall be king after me, and he will sit on my throne in my place."

### Question 101

## **But may we swear an oath by the Name of God in a godly manner?**

Yes, when the government demands it of its subjects, or when necessity requires it, in order to maintain and promote fidelity and truth, to God's glory and for our neighbour's good. Such oath-taking is based on God's Word [1]  
and was therefore rightly used by saints in the Old and the New Testament. [2]

### **Romans 1:9** [2]

9. God, whom I serve with my whole heart in preaching the gospel of his Son, is my witness how constantly I remember you

### **2 Corinthians 1:23** [2]

23. I call God as my witness that it was in order to spare you that I did not return to Corinth.

## Question 102

### May we also swear by saints or other creatures?

No. A lawful oath is a calling upon God, who alone knows the heart, to bear witness to the truth, and to punish me if I swear falsely. [1]  
No creature is worthy of such honour. [2]

#### **Romans 9:1** [1]

1. God's Sovereign Choice

I speak the truth in Christ—I am not lying, my conscience confirms it in the Holy Spirit—

#### **2 Corinthians 1:23** [1]

23. I call God as my witness that it was in order to spare you that I did not return to Corinth.

#### **Matthew 5:34-37** [2]

34. But I tell you, Do not swear at all: either by heaven, for it is God's throne; 35. or by the earth, for it is his footstool; or by Jerusalem, for it is the city of the Great King. 36. And do not swear by your head, for you cannot make even one hair white or black. 37. Simply let your 'Yes' be 'Yes,' and your 'No,' 'No'; anything beyond this comes from the evil one.

#### **Matthew 23:16-22** [2]

16. "Woe to you, blind guides! You say, 'If anyone swears by the temple, it means nothing; but if anyone swears by the gold of the temple, he is bound by his oath.' 17. You blind fools! Which is greater: the gold, or the temple that makes the gold sacred? 18. You also say, 'If anyone swears by the altar, it means nothing; but if anyone swears by the gift on it, he is bound by his oath.' 19. You blind men! Which is greater: the gift, or the altar that makes the gift sacred? 20. Therefore, he who swears by the altar swears by it and by everything on it. 21. And he who swears by the temple swears by it and by the one who dwells in it. 22. And he who swears by heaven swears by God's throne and by the one who sits on it.

#### **James 5:12** [2]

12. Above all, my brothers, do not swear—not by heaven or by earth or by anything else. Let your "Yes" be yes, and your "No," no, or you will be condemned.

### Question 103

## What does God require in the fourth commandment?

First, that the ministry of the gospel and the schools be maintained [1] and that, especially on the day of rest, I diligently attend the church of God [2] to hear God's Word, [3] to use the sacraments, [4] to call publicly upon the LORD, [5] and to give Christian offerings for the poor. [6] Second, that all the days of my life I rest from my evil works, let the LORD work in me through His Holy Spirit, and so begin in this life the eternal sabbath. [7]

### **Deuteronomy 6:4-9** [1]

**4.** Hear, O Israel: The Lord our God, the Lord is one. **5.** Love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your strength. **6.** These commandments that I give you today are to be upon your hearts. **7.** Impress them on your children. Talk about them when you sit at home and when you walk along the road, when you lie down and when you get up. **8.** Tie them as symbols on your hands and bind them on your foreheads. **9.** Write them on the doorframes of your houses and on your gates.

### **Deuteronomy 6:20-25** [1]

**20.** In the future, when your son asks you, "What is the meaning of the stipulations, decrees and laws the Lord our God has commanded you?" **21.** tell him: "We were slaves of Pharaoh in Egypt, but the Lord brought us out of Egypt with a mighty hand. **22.** Before our eyes the Lord sent miraculous signs and wonders—great and terrible—upon Egypt and Pharaoh and his whole household. **23.** But he brought us out from there to bring us in and give us the land that he promised on oath to our forefathers. **24.** The Lord commanded us to obey all these decrees and to fear the Lord our God, so that we might always prosper and be kept alive, as is the case today. **25.** And if we are careful to obey all this law before the Lord our God, as he has commanded us, that will be our righteousness."



## Question 103

### What does God require in the fourth commandment?

First, that the ministry of the gospel and the schools be maintained [1] and that, especially on the day of rest, I diligently attend the church of God [2] to hear God's Word, [3] to use the sacraments, [4] to call publicly upon the LORD, [5] and to give Christian offerings for the poor. [6] Second, that all the days of my life I rest from my evil works, let the LORD work in me through His Holy Spirit, and so begin in this life the eternal sabbath. [7]

#### **1 Corinthians 9:13-14** [1]

**13.** Don't you know that those who work in the temple get their food from the temple, and those who serve at the altar share in what is offered on the altar? **14.** In the same way, the Lord has commanded that those who preach the gospel should receive their living from the gospel.

#### **2 Timothy 2:2** [1]

**2.** And the things you have heard me say in the presence of many witnesses entrust to reliable men who will also be qualified to teach others.

#### **2 Timothy 3:13-17** [1]

**13.** while evil men and impostors will go from bad to worse, deceiving and being deceived. **14.** But as for you, continue in what you have learned and have become convinced of, because you know those from whom you learned it, **15.** and how from infancy you have known the holy Scriptures, which are able to make you wise for salvation through faith in Christ Jesus. **16.** All Scripture is God-breathed and is useful for teaching, rebuking, correcting and training in righteousness, **17.** so that the man of God may be thoroughly equipped for every good work.

#### **Titus 1:5** [1]

##### **5. Titus's Task on Crete**

The reason I left you in Crete was that you might straighten out what was left unfinished and appoint elders in every town, as I directed you.

### Question 103

## What does God require in the fourth commandment?

First, that the ministry of the gospel and the schools be maintained [1]  
and that, especially on the day of rest, I diligently attend the church of God [2] to hear God's Word, [3] to use the sacraments, [4]  
to call publicly upon the LORD, [5] and to give Christian offerings for the poor. [6]  
Second, that all the days of my life I rest from my evil works, let the LORD work in me through His Holy Spirit, and so begin in this life the  
eternal sabbath. [7]

**Deuteronomy 12:5-12** [2]

**Psalm 40:9-10** [2]

9. I proclaim righteousness in the great assembly;  
I do not seal my lips,  
as you know, O Lord. 10. I do not hide your righteousness in my  
heart;  
I speak of your faithfulness and salvation.  
I do not conceal your love and your truth  
from the great assembly.

**Psalm 68:26** [2]

26. Praise God in the great congregation;  
praise the Lord in the assembly of Israel.

### Question 103

## What does God require in the fourth commandment?

First, that the ministry of the gospel and the schools be maintained [1] and that, especially on the day of rest, I diligently attend the church of God [2] to hear God's Word, [3] to use the sacraments, [4] to call publicly upon the LORD, [5] and to give Christian offerings for the poor. [6] Second, that all the days of my life I rest from my evil works, let the LORD work in me through His Holy Spirit, and so begin in this life the eternal sabbath. [7]

### **Acts 2:42-47** [2]

#### **42. The Fellowship of the Believers**

They devoted themselves to the apostles' teaching and to the fellowship, to the breaking of bread and to prayer. **43.** Everyone was filled with awe, and many wonders and miraculous signs were done by the apostles. **44.** All the believers were together and had everything in common. **45.** Selling their possessions and goods, they gave to anyone as he had need. **46.** Every day they continued to meet together in the temple courts. They broke bread in their homes and ate together with glad and sincere hearts, **47.** praising God and enjoying the favor of all the people. And the Lord added to their number daily those who were being saved.

### **Hebrews 10:23-25** [2]

**23.** Let us hold unswervingly to the hope we profess, for he who promised is faithful. **24.** And let us consider how we may spur one another on toward love and good deeds. **25.** Let us not give up meeting together, as some are in the habit of doing, but let us encourage one another—and all the more as you see the Day approaching.

### **Romans 10:14-17** [3]

**14.** How, then, can they call on the one they have not believed in? And how can they believe in the one of whom they have not heard? And how can they hear without someone preaching to them? **15.** And how can they preach unless they are sent? As it is written, "How beautiful are the feet of those who bring good news!" **16.** But not all the Israelites accepted the good news. For Isaiah says, "Lord, who has believed our message?" **17.** Consequently, faith comes from hearing the message, and the message is heard through the word of Christ.

## Question 103

### What does God require in the fourth commandment?

First, that the ministry of the gospel and the schools be maintained [1] and that, especially on the day of rest, I diligently attend the church of God [2] to hear God's Word, [3] to use the sacraments, [4] to call publicly upon the LORD, [5] and to give Christian offerings for the poor. [6] Second, that all the days of my life I rest from my evil works, let the LORD work in me through His Holy Spirit, and so begin in this life the eternal sabbath. [7]

#### **1 Corinthians 14:26-33** [3]

##### **26. Orderly Worship**

What then shall we say, brothers? When you come together, everyone has a hymn, or a word of instruction, a revelation, a tongue or an interpretation. All of these must be done for the strengthening of the church. **27.** If anyone speaks in a tongue, two—or at the most three—should speak, one at a time, and someone must interpret. **28.** If there is no interpreter, the speaker should keep quiet in the church and speak to himself and God. **29.** Two or three prophets should speak, and the others should weigh carefully what is said. **30.** And if a revelation comes to someone who is sitting down, the first speaker should stop. **31.** For you can all prophesy in turn so that everyone may be instructed and encouraged. **32.** The spirits of prophets are subject to the control of prophets. **33.** For God is not a God of disorder but of peace. As in all the congregations of the saints,

#### **1 Timothy 4:13** [3]

**13.** Until I come, devote yourself to the public reading of Scripture, to preaching and to teaching.

#### **1 Corinthians 11:23-24** [4]

**23.** For I received from the Lord what I also passed on to you: The Lord Jesus, on the night he was betrayed, took bread, **24.** and when he had given thanks, he broke it and said, "This is my body, which is for you; do this in remembrance of me."

#### **Colossians 3:16** [5]

**16.** Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly as you teach and admonish one another with all wisdom, and as you sing psalms, hymns and spiritual songs with gratitude in your hearts to God.

#### **1 Timothy 2:1** [5]

##### **1. Instructions on Worship**

I urge, then, first of all, that requests, prayers, intercession and thanksgiving be made for everyone—

#### **Psalm 50:14** [6]

**14.** Sacrifice thank offerings to God,  
fulfill your vows to the Most High,

### Question 103

## What does God require in the fourth commandment?

First, that the ministry of the gospel and the schools be maintained [1]  
and that, especially on the day of rest, I diligently attend the church of God [2] to hear God's Word, [3] to use the sacraments, [4]  
to call publicly upon the LORD, [5] and to give Christian offerings for the poor. [6]  
Second, that all the days of my life I rest from my evil works, let the LORD work in me through His Holy Spirit, and so begin in this life the eternal sabbath. [7]

### **1 Corinthians 16:2** [6]

2. On the first day of every week, each one of you should set aside  
a sum of money in keeping with his income, saving it up, so that  
when I come no collections will have to be made.

### **2 Corinthians 8** [6]

### Question 103

## What does God require in the fourth commandment?

First, that the ministry of the gospel and the schools be maintained [1]  
and that, especially on the day of rest, I diligently attend the church of God [2] to hear God's Word, [3] to use the sacraments, [4]  
to call publicly upon the LORD, [5] and to give Christian offerings for the poor. [6]  
Second, that all the days of my life I rest from my evil works, let the LORD work in me through His Holy Spirit, and so begin in this life the eternal sabbath. [7]

**2 Corinthians 9** [6]

**Isaiah 66:23** [7]

23. From one New Moon to another and from one Sabbath to another, all mankind will come and bow down before me," says the Lord.

**Hebrews 4:9-11** [7]

9. There remains, then, a Sabbath-rest for the people of God; 10. for anyone who enters God's rest also rests from his own work, just as God did from his. 11. Let us, therefore, make every effort to enter that rest, so that no one will fall by following their example of disobedience.

## Question 104

### What does God require in the fifth commandment?

That I show all honour, love, and faithfulness to my father and mother and to all those in authority over me, submit myself with due obedience to their good instruction and discipline, [1]  
and also have patience with their weaknesses and shortcomings, [2] since it is God's will to govern us by their hand. [3]

#### **Exodus 21:17** [1]

17. "Anyone who curses his father or mother must be put to death.

#### **Proverbs 1:8** [1]

8. Exhortations to Embrace Wisdom

Warning Against Enticement

Listen, my son, to your father's instruction  
and do not forsake your mother's teaching.

#### **Proverbs 4:1** [1]

1. Wisdom Is Supreme

Listen, my sons, to a father's instruction;  
pay attention and gain understanding.

#### **Romans 13:1-2** [1]

1. Submission to the Authorities

Everyone must submit himself to the governing authorities, for there is no authority except that which God has established. The authorities that exist have been established by God. 2.

Consequently, he who rebels against the authority is rebelling against what God has instituted, and those who do so will bring judgment on themselves.

#### **Ephesians 5:21-22** [1]

21. Submit to one another out of reverence for Christ. 22. Wives and Husbands

Wives, submit to your husbands as to the Lord.

## Question 104

### What does God require in the fifth commandment?

That I show all honour, love, and faithfulness to my father and mother and to all those in authority over me, submit myself with due obedience to their good instruction and discipline, [1]

and also have patience with their weaknesses and shortcomings, [2] since it is God's will to govern us by their hand. [3]

#### **Ephesians 6:1-9** [1]

##### **1. Children and Parents**

Children, obey your parents in the Lord, for this is right. **2.** “Honor your father and mother”—which is the first commandment with a promise— **3.** “that it may go well with you and that you may enjoy long life on the earth.” **4.** Fathers, do not exasperate your children; instead, bring them up in the training and instruction of the Lord.

##### **5. Slaves and Masters**

Slaves, obey your earthly masters with respect and fear, and with sincerity of heart, just as you would obey Christ. **6.** Obey them not only to win their favor when their eye is on you, but like slaves of Christ, doing the will of God from your heart. **7.** Serve wholeheartedly, as if you were serving the Lord, not men, **8.** because you know that the Lord will reward everyone for whatever good he does, whether he is slave or free. **9.** And masters, treat your slaves in the same way. Do not threaten them, since you know that he who is both their Master and yours is in heaven, and there is no favoritism with him.

#### **Colossians 3:18-4:1** [1]

##### **18. Rules for Christian Households**

Wives, submit to your husbands, as is fitting in the Lord. **19.** Husbands, love your wives and do not be harsh with them. **20.** Children, obey your parents in everything, for this pleases the Lord. **21.** Fathers, do not embitter your children, or they will become discouraged. **22.** Slaves, obey your earthly masters in everything; and do it, not only when their eye is on you and to win their favor, but with sincerity of heart and reverence for the Lord. **23.** Whatever you do, work at it with all your heart, as working for the Lord, not for men, **24.** since you know that you will receive an inheritance from the Lord as a reward. It is the Lord Christ you are serving. **25.** Anyone who does wrong will be repaid for his wrong, and there is no favoritism.

#### **Colossians 3:18-4:1** [1]

**1.** Masters, provide your slaves with what is right and fair, because you know that you also have a Master in heaven.

#### **Proverbs 20:20** [2]

**20.** If a man curses his father or mother, his lamp will be snuffed out in pitch darkness.



## Question 104

### What does God require in the fifth commandment?

That I show all honour, love, and faithfulness to my father and mother and to all those in authority over me, submit myself with due obedience to their good instruction and discipline, [1]

and also have patience with their weaknesses and shortcomings, [2] since it is God's will to govern us by their hand. [3]

#### **Proverbs 23:22** [2]

22. Listen to your father, who gave you life,  
and do not despise your mother when she is old.

#### **1 Peter 2:18** [2]

18. Slaves, submit yourselves to your masters with all respect, not only to those who are good and considerate, but also to those who are harsh.

#### **Matthew 22:21** [3]

21. "Caesar's," they replied.  
Then he said to them, "Give to Caesar what is Caesar's, and to God what is God's."

#### **Romans 13:1-8** [3]

##### 1. Submission to the Authorities

Everyone must submit himself to the governing authorities, for there is no authority except that which God has established. The authorities that exist have been established by God. 2.

Consequently, he who rebels against the authority is rebelling against what God has instituted, and those who do so will bring judgment on themselves. 3. For rulers hold no terror for those who do right, but for those who do wrong. Do you want to be free from fear of the one in authority? Then do what is right and he will commend you. 4. For he is God's servant to do you good. But if you do wrong, be afraid, for he does not bear the sword for nothing. He is God's servant, an agent of wrath to bring punishment on the wrongdoer. 5. Therefore, it is necessary to submit to the authorities, not only because of possible punishment but also because of conscience. 6. This is also why you pay taxes, for the authorities are God's servants, who give their full time to governing. 7. Give everyone what you owe him: If you owe taxes, pay taxes; if revenue, then revenue; if respect, then respect; if honor, then honor. 8. Love, for the Day Is Near  
Let no debt remain outstanding, except the continuing debt to love one another, for he who loves his fellowman has fulfilled the law.

## Question 104

### What does God require in the fifth commandment?

That I show all honour, love, and faithfulness to my father and mother and to all those in authority over me, submit myself with due obedience to their good instruction and discipline, [1]

and also have patience with their weaknesses and shortcomings, [2] since it is God's will to govern us by their hand. [3]

#### **Ephesians 6:1-9** [3]

##### **1. Children and Parents**

Children, obey your parents in the Lord, for this is right. **2.** “Honor your father and mother”—which is the first commandment with a promise— **3.** “that it may go well with you and that you may enjoy long life on the earth.” **4.** Fathers, do not exasperate your children; instead, bring them up in the training and instruction of the Lord.

##### **5. Slaves and Masters**

Slaves, obey your earthly masters with respect and fear, and with sincerity of heart, just as you would obey Christ. **6.** Obey them not only to win their favor when their eye is on you, but like slaves of Christ, doing the will of God from your heart. **7.** Serve wholeheartedly, as if you were serving the Lord, not men, **8.** because you know that the Lord will reward everyone for whatever good he does, whether he is slave or free. **9.** And masters, treat your slaves in the same way. Do not threaten them, since you know that he who is both their Master and yours is in heaven, and there is no favoritism with him.

#### **Colossians 3:18-21** [3]

##### **18. Rules for Christian Households**

Wives, submit to your husbands, as is fitting in the Lord. **19.** Husbands, love your wives and do not be harsh with them. **20.** Children, obey your parents in everything, for this pleases the Lord. **21.** Fathers, do not embitter your children, or they will become discouraged.

## Question 105

### What does God require in the sixth commandment?

I am not to dishonour, hate, injure, or kill my neighbour by thoughts, words, or gestures, and much less by deeds, whether personally or through another; [1]

rather, I am to put away all desire of revenge. [2] Moreover, I am not to harm or recklessly endanger myself. [3]

Therefore, also, the government bears the sword to prevent murder. [4]

#### **Genesis 9:6** [1]

6. "Whoever sheds the blood of man,  
by man shall his blood be shed;  
for in the image of God  
has God made man.

#### **Leviticus 19:17-18** [1]

17. "Do not hate your brother in your heart. Rebuke your neighbor frankly so you will not share in his guilt. 18. "Do not seek revenge or bear a grudge against one of your people, but love your neighbor as yourself. I am the Lord.

#### **Matthew 5:21-22** [1]

##### **21. Murder**

"You have heard that it was said to the people long ago, 'Do not murder, and anyone who murders will be subject to judgment.' 22. But I tell you that anyone who is angry with his brother will be subject to judgment. Again, anyone who says to his brother, 'Raca,' is answerable to the Sanhedrin. But anyone who says, 'You fool!' will be in danger of the fire of hell.

#### **Matthew 26:52** [1]

52. "Put your sword back in its place," Jesus said to him, "for all who draw the sword will die by the sword.

#### **Proverbs 25:21-22** [2]

21. If your enemy is hungry, give him food to eat;  
if he is thirsty, give him water to drink. 22. In doing this, you will heap burning coals on his head,  
and the Lord will reward you.

#### **Matthew 18:35** [2]

35. "This is how my heavenly Father will treat each of you unless you forgive your brother from your heart."

#### **Romans 12:19** [2]

19. Do not take revenge, my friends, but leave room for God's wrath, for it is written: "It is mine to avenge; I will repay," says the Lord.

## Question 105

### What does God require in the sixth commandment?

I am not to dishonour, hate, injure, or kill my neighbour by thoughts, words, or gestures, and much less by deeds, whether personally or through another; [1]

rather, I am to put away all desire of revenge. [2] Moreover, I am not to harm or recklessly endanger myself. [3]

Therefore, also, the government bears the sword to prevent murder. [4]

#### **Ephesians 4:26** [2]

26. "In your anger do not sin": Do not let the sun go down while you are still angry,

#### **Matthew 4:7** [3]

7. Jesus answered him, "It is also written: 'Do not put the Lord your God to the test.'"

#### **Matthew 26:52** [3]

52. "Put your sword back in its place," Jesus said to him, "for all who draw the sword will die by the sword."

#### **Romans 13:11-14** [3]

11. And do this, understanding the present time. The hour has come for you to wake up from your slumber, because our salvation is nearer now than when we first believed. 12. The night is nearly over; the day is almost here. So let us put aside the deeds of darkness and put on the armor of light. 13. Let us behave decently, as in the daytime, not in orgies and drunkenness, not in sexual immorality and debauchery, not in dissension and jealousy. 14. Rather, clothe yourselves with the Lord Jesus Christ, and do not think about how to gratify the desires of the sinful nature.

#### **Genesis 9:6** [4]

6. "Whoever sheds the blood of man, by man shall his blood be shed; for in the image of God has God made man."

#### **Exodus 21:14** [4]

14. But if a man schemes and kills another man deliberately, take him away from my altar and put him to death."

### Question 105

## What does God require in the sixth commandment?

I am not to dishonour, hate, injure, or kill my neighbour by thoughts, words, or gestures, and much less by deeds, whether personally or through another; [1]

rather, I am to put away all desire of revenge. [2] Moreover, I am not to harm or recklessly endanger myself. [3]

Therefore, also, the government bears the sword to prevent murder. [4]

### **Romans 13:4** [4]

4. For he is God's servant to do you good. But if you do wrong, be afraid, for he does not bear the sword for nothing. He is God's servant, an agent of wrath to bring punishment on the wrongdoer.

## Question 106

### But does this commandment speak only of killing?

By forbidding murder God teaches us that He hates the root of murder, such as envy, hatred, anger, and desire of revenge, [1]  
and that He regards all these as murder. [2]

#### **Proverbs 14:30** [1]

**30.** A heart at peace gives life to the body,  
but envy rots the bones.

#### **Romans 1:29** [1]

**29.** They have become filled with every kind of wickedness, evil, greed and depravity. They are full of envy, murder, strife, deceit and malice. They are gossips,

#### **Romans 12:19** [1]

**19.** Do not take revenge, my friends, but leave room for God's wrath, for it is written: "It is mine to avenge; I will repay," says the Lord.

#### **Galatians 5:19-21** [1]

**19.** The acts of the sinful nature are obvious: sexual immorality, impurity and debauchery; **20.** idolatry and witchcraft; hatred, discord, jealousy, fits of rage, selfish ambition, dissensions, factions **21.** and envy; drunkenness, orgies, and the like. I warn you, as I did before, that those who live like this will not inherit the kingdom of God.

#### **James 1:20** [1]

**20.** for man's anger does not bring about the righteous life that God desires.

#### **1 John 2:9-11** [1]

**9.** Anyone who claims to be in the light but hates his brother is still in the darkness. **10.** Whoever loves his brother lives in the light, and there is nothing in him to make him stumble. **11.** But whoever hates his brother is in the darkness and walks around in the darkness; he does not know where he is going, because the darkness has blinded him.

#### **1 John 3:15** [2]

**15.** Anyone who hates his brother is a murderer, and you know that no murderer has eternal life in him.

## Question 107

### Is it enough, then, that we do not kill our neighbour in any such way?

No. When God condemns envy, hatred, and anger, He commands us to love our neighbour as ourselves, [1]  
to show patience, peace, gentleness, mercy, and friendliness toward him, [2]  
to protect him from harm as much as we can, and to do good even to our enemies. [3]

#### **Matthew 7:12** [1]

12. So in everything, do to others what you would have them do to you, for this sums up the Law and the Prophets.

#### **Matthew 22:39** [1]

39. And the second is like it: 'Love your neighbor as yourself.'

#### **Romans 12:10** [1]

10. Be devoted to one another in brotherly love. Honor one another above yourselves.

#### **Matthew 5:5** [2]

5. Blessed are the meek,  
for they will inherit the earth.

#### **Luke 6:36** [2]

36. Be merciful, just as your Father is merciful.

#### **Romans 12:10** [2]

10. Be devoted to one another in brotherly love. Honor one another above yourselves.

#### **Romans 12:18** [2]

18. If it is possible, as far as it depends on you, live at peace with everyone.

#### **Galatians 6:1-2** [2]

1. Doing Good to All

Brothers, if someone is caught in a sin, you who are spiritual should restore him gently. But watch yourself, or you also may be tempted. 2. Carry each other's burdens, and in this way you will fulfill the law of Christ.

#### **Ephesians 4:2** [2]

2. Be completely humble and gentle; be patient, bearing with one another in love.

#### **Colossians 3:12** [2]

12. Therefore, as God's chosen people, holy and dearly loved, clothe yourselves with compassion, kindness, humility, gentleness and patience.

## Question 107

### Is it enough, then, that we do not kill our neighbour in any such way?

No. When God condemns envy, hatred, and anger, He commands us to love our neighbour as ourselves, [1]  
to show patience, peace, gentleness, mercy, and friendliness toward him, [2]  
to protect him from harm as much as we can, and to do good even to our enemies. [3]

#### **1 Peter 3:8** [2]

##### **8. Suffering for Doing Good**

Finally, all of you, live in harmony with one another; be sympathetic, love as brothers, be compassionate and humble.

#### **Exodus 23:4-5** [3]

4. "If you come across your enemy's ox or donkey wandering off, be sure to take it back to him. 5. If you see the donkey of someone who hates you fallen down under its load, do not leave it there; be sure you help him with it.

#### **Matthew 5:44-45** [3]

44. But I tell you: Love your enemies and pray for those who persecute you, 45. that you may be sons of your Father in heaven. He causes his sun to rise on the evil and the good, and sends rain on the righteous and the unrighteous.

#### **Romans 12:20** [3]

##### **20. On the contrary:**

"If your enemy is hungry, feed him;  
if he is thirsty, give him something to drink.  
In doing this, you will heap burning coals on his head."



## Question 108

### What does the seventh commandment teach us?

That all unchastity is cursed by God. [1] We must therefore detest it from the heart [2] and live chaste and disciplined lives, both within and outside of holy marriage. [3]

#### **Leviticus 18:30** [1]

**30.** Keep my requirements and do not follow any of the detestable customs that were practiced before you came and do not defile yourselves with them. I am the Lord your God.”

#### **Ephesians 5:3-5** [1]

**3.** But among you there must not be even a hint of sexual immorality, or of any kind of impurity, or of greed, because these are improper for God’s holy people. **4.** Nor should there be obscenity, foolish talk or coarse joking, which are out of place, but rather thanksgiving. **5.** For of this you can be sure: No immoral, impure or greedy person—such a man is an idolater—has any inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and of God.

#### **Jude 1:22** [2]

**22.** Be merciful to those who doubt;

#### **Jude 1:23** [2]

**23.** snatch others from the fire and save them; to others show mercy, mixed with fear—hating even the clothing stained by corrupted flesh.

#### **1 Corinthians 7:1-9** [3]

##### **1. Marriage**

Now for the matters you wrote about: It is good for a man not to marry. **2.** But since there is so much immorality, each man should have his own wife, and each woman her own husband. **3.** The husband should fulfill his marital duty to his wife, and likewise the wife to her husband. **4.** The wife’s body does not belong to her alone but also to her husband. In the same way, the husband’s body does not belong to him alone but also to his wife. **5.** Do not deprive each other except by mutual consent and for a time, so that you may devote yourselves to prayer. Then come together again so that Satan will not tempt you because of your lack of self-control. **6.** I say this as a concession, not as a command. **7.** I wish that all men were as I am. But each man has his own gift from God; one has this gift, another has that. **8.** Now to the unmarried and the widows I say: It is good for them to stay unmarried, as I am. **9.** But if they cannot control themselves, they should marry, for it is better to marry than to burn with passion.

## Question 108

### What does the seventh commandment teach us?

That all unchastity is cursed by God. [1] We must therefore detest it from the heart [2] and live chaste and disciplined lives, both within and outside of holy marriage. [3]

#### **1 Thessalonians 4:3-8** [3]

3. It is God's will that you should be sanctified: that you should avoid sexual immorality; 4. that each of you should learn to control his own body in a way that is holy and honorable, 5. not in passionate lust like the heathen, who do not know God; 6. and that in this matter no one should wrong his brother or take advantage of him. The Lord will punish men for all such sins, as we have already told you and warned you. 7. For God did not call us to be impure, but to live a holy life. 8. Therefore, he who rejects this instruction does not reject man but God, who gives you his Holy Spirit.

#### **Hebrews 13:4** [3]

4. Marriage should be honored by all, and the marriage bed kept pure, for God will judge the adulterer and all the sexually immoral.

## Question 109

# Does God in this commandment forbid nothing more than adultery and similar shameful sins?

Since we, body and soul, are temples of the Holy Spirit, it is God's will that we keep ourselves pure and holy. Therefore He forbids all unchaste acts, gestures, words, thoughts, desires, [1] and whatever may entice us to unchastity. [2]

### **Matthew 5:27-29** [1]

#### **27. Adultery**

"You have heard that it was said, 'Do not commit adultery.' **28.** But I tell you that anyone who looks at a woman lustfully has already committed adultery with her in his heart. **29.** If your right eye causes you to sin, gouge it out and throw it away. It is better for you to lose one part of your body than for your whole body to be thrown into hell.

### **1 Corinthians 6:18-20** [1]

**18.** Flee from sexual immorality. All other sins a man commits are outside his body, but he who sins sexually sins against his own body. **19.** Do you not know that your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit, who is in you, whom you have received from God? You are not your own; **20.** you were bought at a price. Therefore honor God with your body.

### **Ephesians 5:3-4** [1]

**3.** But among you there must not be even a hint of sexual immorality, or of any kind of impurity, or of greed, because these are improper for God's holy people. **4.** Nor should there be obscenity, foolish talk or coarse joking, which are out of place, but rather thanksgiving.

### **1 Corinthians 15:33** [2]

**33.** Do not be misled: "Bad company corrupts good character."

### **Ephesians 5:18** [2]

**18.** Do not get drunk on wine, which leads to debauchery. Instead, be filled with the Spirit.

## Question 110

### What does God forbid in the eighth commandment?

God forbids not only outright theft and robbery [1]

but also such wicked schemes and devices as false weights and measures, deceptive merchandising, counterfeit money, and usury; [2]

we must not defraud our neighbour in any way, whether by force or by show of right. [3] In addition God forbids all greed [4]

and all abuse or squandering of His gifts. [5]

#### **Exodus 22:1** [1]

##### **1. Protection of Property**

"If a man steals an ox or a sheep and slaughters it or sells it, he must pay back five head of cattle for the ox and four sheep for the sheep.

#### **1 Corinthians 5:9-10** [1]

9. I have written you in my letter not to associate with sexually immoral people— 10. not at all meaning the people of this world who are immoral, or the greedy and swindlers, or idolaters. In that case you would have to leave this world.

#### **1 Corinthians 6:9, 10** [1]

9. Do you not know that the wicked will not inherit the kingdom of God? Do not be deceived: Neither the sexually immoral nor idolaters nor adulterers nor male prostitutes nor homosexual offenders 10. nor thieves nor the greedy nor drunkards nor slanderers nor swindlers will inherit the kingdom of God.

#### **Deuteronomy 25:13-16** [2]

13. Do not have two differing weights in your bag—one heavy, one light. 14. Do not have two differing measures in your house—one large, one small. 15. You must have accurate and honest weights and measures, so that you may live long in the land the Lord your God is giving you. 16. For the Lord your God detests anyone who does these things, anyone who deals dishonestly.

#### **Psalms 15:5** [2]

5. who lends his money without usury  
and does not accept a bribe against the innocent.  
He who does these things  
will never be shaken.

#### **Proverbs 11:1** [2]

1. The Lord abhors dishonest scales,  
but accurate weights are his delight.

#### **Proverbs 12:22** [2]

22. The Lord detests lying lips,  
but he delights in men who are truthful.

## Question 110

### What does God forbid in the eighth commandment?

God forbids not only outright theft and robbery [1]

but also such wicked schemes and devices as false weights and measures, deceptive merchandising, counterfeit money, and usury; [2]

we must not defraud our neighbour in any way, whether by force or by show of right. [3] In addition God forbids all greed [4]

and all abuse or squandering of His gifts. [5]

#### **Ezekiel 45:9-12** [2]

9. "This is what the Sovereign Lord says: You have gone far enough, O princes of Israel! Give up your violence and oppression and do what is just and right. Stop dispossessing my people, declares the Sovereign Lord. 10. You are to use accurate scales, an accurate ephah and an accurate bath. 11. The ephah and the bath are to be the same size, the bath containing a tenth of a homer and the ephah a tenth of a homer; the homer is to be the standard measure for both. 12. The shekel is to consist of twenty gerahs. Twenty shekels plus twenty-five shekels plus fifteen shekels equal one mina.

#### **Luke 6:35** [2]

35. But love your enemies, do good to them, and lend to them without expecting to get anything back. Then your reward will be great, and you will be sons of the Most High, because he is kind to the ungrateful and wicked.

#### **Micah 6:9-11** [3]

9. Israel's Guilt and Punishment

Listen! The Lord is calling to the city—

and to fear your name is wisdom—

"Heed the rod and the One who appointed it. 10. Am I still to forget,

O wicked house,

your ill-gotten treasures

and the short ephah, which is accursed? 11. Shall I acquit a man

with dishonest scales,

with a bag of false weights?

#### **Luke 3:14** [3]

14. Then some soldiers asked him, "And what should we do?"

He replied, "Don't extort money and don't accuse people

falsely—be content with your pay."

## Question 110

### What does God forbid in the eighth commandment?

God forbids not only outright theft and robbery [1]

but also such wicked schemes and devices as false weights and measures, deceptive merchandising, counterfeit money, and usury; [2]

we must not defraud our neighbour in any way, whether by force or by show of right. [3] In addition God forbids all greed [4]

and all abuse or squandering of His gifts. [5]

#### **James 5:1-6** [3]

##### **1.** Warning to Rich Oppressors

Now listen, you rich people, weep and wail because of the misery that is coming upon you. **2.** Your wealth has rotted, and moths

have eaten your clothes. **3.** Your gold and silver are corroded.

Their corrosion will testify against you and eat your flesh like fire.

You have hoarded wealth in the last days. **4.** Look! The wages you

failed to pay the workmen who mowed your fields are crying out

against you. The cries of the harvesters have reached the ears of

the Lord Almighty. **5.** You have lived on earth in luxury and

self-indulgence. You have fattened yourselves in the day of

slaughter. **6.** You have condemned and murdered innocent men,

who were not opposing you.

#### **Luke 12:15** [4]

**15.** Then he said to them, "Watch out! Be on your guard against all

kinds of greed; a man's life does not consist in the abundance of

his possessions."

#### **Ephesians 5:5** [4]

**5.** For of this you can be sure: No immoral, impure or greedy person—such a man is an idolater—has any inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and of God.

#### **Proverbs 21:20** [5]

**20.** In the house of the wise are stores of choice food and oil, but a foolish man devours all he has.

#### **Proverbs 23:20-21** [5]

**20.** Do not join those who drink too much wine or gorge themselves on meat, **21.** for drunkards and gluttons become poor, and drowsiness clothes them in rags.

## Question 110

### What does God forbid in the eighth commandment?

God forbids not only outright theft and robbery [1]  
but also such wicked schemes and devices as false weights and measures, deceptive merchandising, counterfeit money, and usury; [2]  
we must not defraud our neighbour in any way, whether by force or by show of right. [3] In addition God forbids all greed [4]  
and all abuse or squandering of His gifts. [5]

#### **Luke 16:10-13** [5]

**10.** "Whoever can be trusted with very little can also be trusted with much, and whoever is dishonest with very little will also be dishonest with much. **11.** So if you have not been trustworthy in handling worldly wealth, who will trust you with true riches? **12.** And if you have not been trustworthy with someone else's property, who will give you property of your own? **13.** "No servant can serve two masters. Either he will hate the one and love the other, or he will be devoted to the one and despise the other. You cannot serve both God and Money."

### Question 111

## What does God require of you in this commandment?

I must promote my neighbour's good wherever I can and may, deal with him as I would like others to deal with me, and work faithfully so that I may be able to give to those in need. [1]

#### **Isaiah 58:5-10** [1]

#### **Matthew 7:12** [1]

12. So in everything, do to others what you would have them do to you, for this sums up the Law and the Prophets.

#### **Galatians 6:9-10** [1]

9. Let us not become weary in doing good, for at the proper time we will reap a harvest if we do not give up. 10. Therefore, as we have opportunity, let us do good to all people, especially to those who belong to the family of believers.

#### **Ephesians 4:28** [1]

28. He who has been stealing must steal no longer, but must work, doing something useful with his own hands, that he may have something to share with those in need.



## Question 112

### What is required in the ninth commandment?

I must not give false testimony against anyone, twist no one's words, not gossip or slander, nor condemn or join in condemning anyone rashly and unheard. [1]

Rather, I must avoid all lying and deceit as the devil's own works, under penalty of God's heavy wrath. [2]

In court and everywhere else, I must love the truth, [3]

speak and confess it honestly, and do what I can to defend and promote my neighbour's honour and reputation. [4]

#### **Psalm 15** [1]

1. Psalm 15

A psalm of David.

Lord, who may dwell in your sanctuary?

Who may live on your holy hill? 2. He whose walk is blameless and who does what is righteous, who speaks the truth from his heart 3. and has no slander on his tongue,

who does his neighbor no wrong

and casts no slur on his fellowman, 4. who despises a vile man but honors those who fear the Lord,

who keeps his oath

even when it hurts, 5. who lends his money without usury and does not accept a bribe against the innocent.

He who does these things will never be shaken.

#### **Proverbs 19:5** [1]

5. A false witness will not go unpunished, and he who pours out lies will not go free.

#### **Proverbs 19:9** [1]

9. A false witness will not go unpunished, and he who pours out lies will perish.

#### **Proverbs 21:28** [1]

28. A false witness will perish, and whoever listens to him will be destroyed forever.

#### **Matthew 7:1** [1]

1. Judging Others

"Do not judge, or you too will be judged.

#### **Luke 6:37** [1]

37. Judging Others

"Do not judge, and you will not be judged. Do not condemn, and you will not be condemned. Forgive, and you will be forgiven.

## Question 112

### What is required in the ninth commandment?

I must not give false testimony against anyone, twist no one's words, not gossip or slander, nor condemn or join in condemning anyone rashly and unheard. [1]

Rather, I must avoid all lying and deceit as the devil's own works, under penalty of God's heavy wrath. [2]

In court and everywhere else, I must love the truth, [3]

speak and confess it honestly, and do what I can to defend and promote my neighbour's honour and reputation. [4]

#### **Romans 1:28-32** [1]

28. Furthermore, since they did not think it worthwhile to retain the knowledge of God, he gave them over to a depraved mind, to do what ought not to be done. 29. They have become filled with every kind of wickedness, evil, greed and depravity. They are full of envy, murder, strife, deceit and malice. They are gossips, 30. slanderers, God-haters, insolent, arrogant and boastful; they invent ways of doing evil; they disobey their parents; 31. they are senseless, faithless, heartless, ruthless. 32. Although they know God's righteous decree that those who do such things deserve death, they not only continue to do these very things but also approve of those who practice them.

#### **Leviticus 19:11-12** [2]

11. "Do not steal.

"Do not lie.

"Do not deceive one another. 12. "Do not swear falsely by my name and so profane the name of your God. I am the Lord.

#### **Proverbs 12:22** [2]

22. The Lord detests lying lips,  
but he delights in men who are truthful.

#### **Proverbs 13:5** [2]

5. The righteous hate what is false,  
but the wicked bring shame and disgrace.

#### **John 8:44** [2]

44. You belong to your father, the devil, and you want to carry out your father's desire. He was a murderer from the beginning, not holding to the truth, for there is no truth in him. When he lies, he speaks his native language, for he is a liar and the father of lies.

#### **Revelation 21:8** [2]

8. But the cowardly, the unbelieving, the vile, the murderers, the sexually immoral, those who practice magic arts, the idolaters and all liars—their place will be in the fiery lake of burning sulfur. This is the second death."

## Question 112

### What is required in the ninth commandment?

I must not give false testimony against anyone, twist no one's words, not gossip or slander, nor condemn or join in condemning anyone rashly and unheard. [1]

Rather, I must avoid all lying and deceit as the devil's own works, under penalty of God's heavy wrath. [2]

In court and everywhere else, I must love the truth, [3]

speak and confess it honestly, and do what I can to defend and promote my neighbour's honour and reputation. [4]

#### **1 Corinthians 13:6** [3]

6. Love does not delight in evil but rejoices with the truth.

#### **Ephesians 4:25** [3]

25. Therefore each of you must put off falsehood and speak truthfully to his neighbor, for we are all members of one body.

#### **1 Peter 3:8-9** [4]

8. Suffering for Doing Good

Finally, all of you, live in harmony with one another; be sympathetic, love as brothers, be compassionate and humble. 9.

Do not repay evil with evil or insult with insult, but with blessing, because to this you were called so that you may inherit a blessing.

#### **1 Peter 4:8** [4]

8. Above all, love each other deeply, because love covers over a multitude of sins.

## Question 113

### What does the tenth commandment require of us?

That not even the slightest thought or desire contrary to any of God's commandments should ever arise in our heart. Rather, we should always hate all sin with all our heart, and delight in all righteousness. [1]

#### **Psalm 19:7-14** [1]

7. The law of the Lord is perfect,  
reviving the soul.

The statutes of the Lord are trustworthy,  
making wise the simple. 8. The precepts of the Lord are right,  
giving joy to the heart.

The commands of the Lord are radiant,  
giving light to the eyes. 9. The fear of the Lord is pure,  
enduring forever.

The ordinances of the Lord are sure  
and altogether righteous. 10. They are more precious than gold,  
than much pure gold;  
they are sweeter than honey,  
than honey from the comb. 11. By them is your servant warned;  
in keeping them there is great reward. 12. Who can discern his  
errors?

Forgive my hidden faults. 13. Keep your servant also from willful  
sins;

may they not rule over me.

Then will I be blameless,  
innocent of great transgression. 14. May the words of my mouth  
and the meditation of my heart

be pleasing in your sight,  
O Lord, my Rock and my Redeemer.

Table of Content

#### **Psalm 139:23-24** [1]

23. Search me, O God, and know my heart;  
test me and know my anxious thoughts. 24. See if there is any  
offensive way in me,  
and lead me in the way everlasting.

#### **Romans 7:7-8** [1]

7. Struggling With Sin

What shall we say, then? Is the law sin? Certainly not! Indeed I  
would not have known what sin was except through the law. For I  
would not have known what coveting really was if the law had not  
said, "Do not covet." 8. But sin, seizing the opportunity afforded by  
the commandment, produced in me every kind of covetous  
desire. For apart from law, sin is dead.

## Question 114

### But can those converted to God keep these commandments perfectly?

No. In this life even the holiest have only a small beginning of this obedience. [1]

Nevertheless, with earnest purpose they do begin to live not only according to some but to all the commandments of God. [2]

#### **Ecclesiastes 7:20** [1]

20. There is not a righteous man on earth who does what is right and never sins.

#### **Romans 7:14-15** [1]

14. We know that the law is spiritual; but I am unspiritual, sold as a slave to sin. 15. I do not understand what I do. For what I want to do I do not do, but what I hate I do.

#### **1 Corinthians 13:9** [1]

9. For we know in part and we prophesy in part,

#### **1 John 1:8** [1]

8. If we claim to be without sin, we deceive ourselves and the truth is not in us.

#### **Psalms 1:1-2** [2]

1. BOOK I

Psalms 1-41

Psalms 1

Blessed is the man

who does not walk in the counsel of the wicked

or stand in the way of sinners

or sit in the seat of mockers. 2. But his delight is in the law of the Lord,

and on his law he meditates day and night.

#### **Romans 7:22-25** [2]

22. For in my inner being I delight in God's law; 23. but I see another law at work in the members of my body, waging war against the law of my mind and making me a prisoner of the law of sin at work within my members. 24. What a wretched man I am! Who will rescue me from this body of death? 25. Thanks be to God—through Jesus Christ our Lord!

So then, I myself in my mind am a slave to God's law, but in the sinful nature a slave to the law of sin.

## Question 114

### **But can those converted to God keep these commandments perfectly?**

No. In this life even the holiest have only a small beginning of this obedience. [1]

Nevertheless, with earnest purpose they do begin to live not only according to some but to all the commandments of God. [2]

#### **Philippians 3:12-16** [2]

##### **12. Pressing on Toward the Goal**

Not that I have already obtained all this, or have already been made perfect, but I press on to take hold of that for which Christ Jesus took hold of me. **13.** Brothers, I do not consider myself yet to have taken hold of it. But one thing I do: Forgetting what is behind and straining toward what is ahead, **14.** I press on toward the goal to win the prize for which God has called me heavenward in Christ Jesus. **15.** All of us who are mature should take such a view of things. And if on some point you think differently, that too God will make clear to you. **16.** Only let us live up to what we have already attained.

## Question 115

# **If in this life no one can keep the ten commandments perfectly, why does God have them preached so strictly?**

First, that throughout our life we may more and more become aware of our sinful nature, and therefore seek more eagerly the forgiveness of sins and righteousness in Christ. [1]

Second, that we may be zealous for good deeds and constantly pray to God for the grace of the Holy Spirit, that He may more and more renew us after God's image, until after this life we reach the goal of perfection. [2]

### **Psalm 32:5** [1]

5. Then I acknowledged my sin to you  
and did not cover up my iniquity.  
I said, "I will confess  
my transgressions to the Lord"—  
and you forgave  
the guilt of my sin. Selah

### **Romans 3:19-26** [1]

19. Now we know that whatever the law says, it says to those who are under the law, so that every mouth may be silenced and the whole world held accountable to God. 20. Therefore no one will be declared righteous in his sight by observing the law; rather, through the law we become conscious of sin. 21. Righteousness Through Faith

But now a righteousness from God, apart from law, has been made known, to which the Law and the Prophets testify. 22. This righteousness from God comes through faith in Jesus Christ to all who believe. There is no difference, 23. for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God, 24. and are justified freely by his grace through the redemption that came by Christ Jesus. 25. God presented him as a sacrifice of atonement, through faith in his blood. He did this to demonstrate his justice, because in his forbearance he had left the sins committed beforehand unpunished— 26. he did it to demonstrate his justice at the present time, so as to be just and the one who justifies those who have faith in Jesus.

## Question 115

# If in this life no one can keep the ten commandments perfectly, why does God have them preached so strictly?

First, that throughout our life we may more and more become aware of our sinful nature, and therefore seek more eagerly the forgiveness of sins and righteousness in Christ. [1]

Second, that we may be zealous for good deeds and constantly pray to God for the grace of the Holy Spirit, that He may more and more renew us after God's image, until after this life we reach the goal of perfection. [2]

### **Romans 7:7** [1]

#### **7. Struggling With Sin**

What shall we say, then? Is the law sin? Certainly not! Indeed I would not have known what sin was except through the law. For I would not have known what coveting really was if the law had not said, "Do not covet."

### **Romans 7:24-25** [1]

**24.** What a wretched man I am! Who will rescue me from this body of death? **25.** Thanks be to God—through Jesus Christ our Lord! So then, I myself in my mind am a slave to God's law, but in the sinful nature a slave to the law of sin.

### **1 John 1:9** [1]

**9.** If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just and will forgive us our sins and purify us from all unrighteousness.

### **1 Corinthians 9:24** [2]

**24.** Do you not know that in a race all the runners run, but only one gets the prize? Run in such a way as to get the prize.

### **Philippians 3:12-14** [2]

#### **12. Pressing on Toward the Goal**

Not that I have already obtained all this, or have already been made perfect, but I press on to take hold of that for which Christ Jesus took hold of me. **13.** Brothers, I do not consider myself yet to have taken hold of it. But one thing I do: Forgetting what is behind and straining toward what is ahead, **14.** I press on toward the goal to win the prize for which God has called me heavenward in Christ Jesus.



### Question 115

## **If in this life no one can keep the ten commandments perfectly, why does God have them preached so strictly?**

First, that throughout our life we may more and more become aware of our sinful nature, and therefore seek more eagerly the forgiveness of sins and righteousness in Christ. [1]

Second, that we may be zealous for good deeds and constantly pray to God for the grace of the Holy Spirit, that He may more and more renew us after God's image, until after this life we reach the goal of perfection. [2]

### **1 John 3:1-3** [2]

1. How great is the love the Father has lavished on us, that we should be called children of God! And that is what we are! The reason the world does not know us is that it did not know him. 2. Dear friends, now we are children of God, and what we will be has not yet been made known. But we know that when he appears, we shall be like him, for we shall see him as he is. 3. Everyone who has this hope in him purifies himself, just as he is pure.

## Question 116

### Why is prayer necessary for Christians?

Because prayer is the most important part of the thankfulness which God requires of us. [1]

Moreover, God will give His grace and the Holy Spirit only to those who constantly and with heartfelt longing ask Him for these gifts and thank Him for them. [2]

#### **Psalm 50:14-15** [1]

**14.** Sacrifice thank offerings to God,  
fulfill your vows to the Most High, **15.** and call upon me in the day of  
trouble;  
I will deliver you, and you will honor me.”

#### **Psalm 116:12-19** [1]

**12.** How can I repay the Lord  
for all his goodness to me? **13.** I will lift up the cup of salvation  
and call on the name of the Lord. **14.** I will fulfill my vows to the  
Lord  
in the presence of all his people. **15.** Precious in the sight of the  
Lord  
is the death of his saints. **16.** O Lord, truly I am your servant;  
I am your servant, the son of your maidservant;  
you have freed me from my chains. **17.** I will sacrifice a thank  
offering to you  
and call on the name of the Lord. **18.** I will fulfill my vows to the  
Lord  
in the presence of all his people, **19.** in the courts of the house of  
the Lord—  
in your midst, O Jerusalem.  
Praise the Lord.

#### **1 Thessalonians 5:16-18** [1]

**16.** Be joyful always; **17.** pray continually; **18.** give thanks in all  
circumstances, for this is God’s will for you in Christ Jesus.

## Question 116

### Why is prayer necessary for Christians?

Because prayer is the most important part of the thankfulness which God requires of us. [1]

Moreover, God will give His grace and the Holy Spirit only to those who constantly and with heartfelt longing ask Him for these gifts and thank Him for them. [2]

#### **Matthew 7:7-8** [2]

7. Ask, Seek, Knock

"Ask and it will be given to you; seek and you will find; knock and the door will be opened to you. 8. For everyone who asks receives; he who seeks finds; and to him who knocks, the door will be opened.

#### **Luke 11:9-13** [2]

9. "So I say to you: Ask and it will be given to you; seek and you will find; knock and the door will be opened to you. 10. For everyone who asks receives; he who seeks finds; and to him who knocks, the door will be opened. 11. "Which of you fathers, if your son asks for a fish, will give him a snake instead? 12. Or if he asks for an egg, will give him a scorpion? 13. If you then, though you are evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father in heaven give the Holy Spirit to those who ask him!"

## Question 117

### What belongs to a prayer which pleases God and is heard by Him?

First, we must from the heart call upon the one true God only, who has revealed Himself in His Word, for all that He has commanded us to pray. [1]

Second, we must thoroughly know our need and misery, so that we may humble ourselves before God. [2]

Third, we must rest on this firm foundation that, although we do not deserve it, God will certainly hear our prayer for the sake of Christ our Lord, as He has promised us in His Word. [3]

#### **Psalm 145:18-20** [1]

**18.** The Lord is near to all who call on him,  
to all who call on him in truth. **19.** He fulfills the desires of those  
who fear him;  
he hears their cry and saves them. **20.** The Lord watches over all  
who love him,  
but all the wicked he will destroy.

#### **John 4:22-24** [1]

**22.** You Samaritans worship what you do not know; we worship  
what we do know, for salvation is from the Jews. **23.** Yet a time is  
coming and has now come when the true worshipers will worship  
the Father in spirit and truth, for they are the kind of worshipers  
the Father seeks. **24.** God is spirit, and his worshipers must  
worship in spirit and in truth."

#### **Romans 8:26-27** [1]

**26.** In the same way, the Spirit helps us in our weakness. We do  
not know what we ought to pray for, but the Spirit himself  
intercedes for us with groans that words cannot express. **27.** And  
he who searches our hearts knows the mind of the Spirit, because  
the Spirit intercedes for the saints in accordance with God's will.

#### **James 1:5** [1]

**5.** If any of you lacks wisdom, he should ask God, who gives  
generously to all without finding fault, and it will be given to him.

#### **1 John 5:14-15** [1]

**14.** This is the confidence we have in approaching God: that if we  
ask anything according to his will, he hears us. **15.** And if we know  
that he hears us—whatever we ask—we know that we have what  
we asked of him.

## Question 117

### What belongs to a prayer which pleases God and is heard by Him?

First, we must from the heart call upon the one true God only, who has revealed Himself in His Word, for all that He has commanded us to pray. [1]

Second, we must thoroughly know our need and misery, so that we may humble ourselves before God. [2]

Third, we must rest on this firm foundation that, although we do not deserve it, God will certainly hear our prayer for the sake of Christ our Lord, as He has promised us in His Word. [3]

#### **Revelation 19:10** [1]

10. At this I fell at his feet to worship him. But he said to me, "Do not do it! I am a fellow servant with you and with your brothers who hold to the testimony of Jesus. Worship God! For the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy."

#### **2 Chronicles 7:14** [2]

14. if my people, who are called by my name, will humble themselves and pray and seek my face and turn from their wicked ways, then will I hear from heaven and will forgive their sin and will heal their land.

#### **2 Chronicles 20:12** [2]

12. O our God, will you not judge them? For we have no power to face this vast army that is attacking us. We do not know what to do, but our eyes are upon you."

#### **Psalms 2:11** [2]

11. Serve the Lord with fear  
and rejoice with trembling.

#### **Psalms 34:18** [2]

18. The Lord is close to the brokenhearted  
and saves those who are crushed in spirit.

#### **Psalms 62:8** [2]

8. Trust in him at all times, O people;  
pour out your hearts to him,  
for God is our refuge. Selah

#### **Isaiah 66:2** [2]

2. Has not my hand made all these things,  
and so they came into being?"  
declares the Lord.  
"This is the one I esteem:  
he who is humble and contrite in spirit,  
and trembles at my word.

## Question 117

### What belongs to a prayer which pleases God and is heard by Him?

First, we must from the heart call upon the one true God only, who has revealed Himself in His Word, for all that He has commanded us to pray. [1]

Second, we must thoroughly know our need and misery, so that we may humble ourselves before God. [2]

Third, we must rest on this firm foundation that, although we do not deserve it, God will certainly hear our prayer for the sake of Christ our Lord, as He has promised us in His Word. [3]

#### Revelation 4 [2]

#### Daniel 9:17-19 [3]

17. "Now, our God, hear the prayers and petitions of your servant. For your sake, O Lord, look with favor on your desolate sanctuary.

18. Give ear, O God, and hear; open your eyes and see the desolation of the city that bears your Name. We do not make requests of you because we are righteous, but because of your great mercy. 19. O Lord, listen! O Lord, forgive! O Lord, hear and act! For your sake, O my God, do not delay, because your city and your people bear your Name."

#### Matthew 7:8 [3]

8. For everyone who asks receives; he who seeks finds; and to him who knocks, the door will be opened.

#### John 14:13-14 [3]

13. And I will do whatever you ask in my name, so that the Son may bring glory to the Father. 14. You may ask me for anything in my name, and I will do it.

### Question 117

## What belongs to a prayer which pleases God and is heard by Him?

First, we must from the heart call upon the one true God only, who has revealed Himself in His Word, for all that He has commanded us to pray. [1]

Second, we must thoroughly know our need and misery, so that we may humble ourselves before God. [2]

Third, we must rest on this firm foundation that, although we do not deserve it, God will certainly hear our prayer for the sake of Christ our Lord, as He has promised us in His Word. [3]

### **John 16:23** [3]

23. In that day you will no longer ask me anything. I tell you the truth, my Father will give you whatever you ask in my name.

### **Romans 10:13** [3]

13. for, "Everyone who calls on the name of the Lord will be saved."

### **James 1:6** [3]

6. But when he asks, he must believe and not doubt, because he who doubts is like a wave of the sea, blown and tossed by the wind.

### Question 118

## What has God commanded us to ask of Him?

All the things we need for body and soul, [1] as included in the prayer which Christ our Lord Himself taught us. [2]

#### **Matthew 6:33** [1]

33. But seek first his kingdom and his righteousness, and all these things will be given to you as well.

#### **James 1:17** [1]

17. Every good and perfect gift is from above, coming down from the Father of the heavenly lights, who does not change like shifting shadows.



## Question 119

### What is the Lord's prayer?

Our Father who art in heaven, Hallowed be Thy Name. Thy kingdom come, Thy will be done, On earth as it is in heaven. Give us this day our daily bread; And forgive us our debts, As we also have forgiven our debtors; And lead us not into temptation, But deliver us from the evil one. For Thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, for ever. Amen. [1]

#### **Matthew 6:9-13** [1]

9. "This, then, is how you should pray:

"Our Father in heaven,  
hallowed be your name, 10. your kingdom come,  
your will be done  
on earth as it is in heaven. 11. Give us today our daily bread. 12.  
Forgive us our debts,  
as we also have forgiven our debtors. 13. And lead us not into  
temptation,  
but deliver us from the evil one.'

#### **Luke 11:2-4** [1]

2. He said to them, "When you pray, say:

"Father,  
hallowed be your name,  
your kingdom come. 3. Give us each day our daily bread. 4. Forgive  
us our sins,  
for we also forgive everyone who sins against us.  
And lead us not into temptation."

## Question 120

### Why has Christ commanded us to address God as Our Father?

To awaken in us at the very beginning of our prayer that childlike reverence and trust toward God which should be basic to our prayer: God has become our Father through Christ and will much less deny us what we ask of Him in faith than our fathers would refuse us earthly things. [1]

#### **Matthew 7:9-11** [1]

9. "Which of you, if his son asks for bread, will give him a stone? 10. Or if he asks for a fish, will give him a snake? 11. If you, then, though you are evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father in heaven give good gifts to those who ask him!

#### **Luke 11:11-13** [1]

11. "Which of you fathers, if your son asks for a fish, will give him a snake instead? 12. Or if he asks for an egg, will give him a scorpion? 13. If you then, though you are evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father in heaven give the Holy Spirit to those who ask him!"

## Question 121

### Why is there added, Who art in heaven?

These words teach us not to think of God's heavenly majesty in an earthly manner, [1]  
and to expect from His almighty power all things we need for body and soul. [2]

#### **Jeremiah 23:23-24** [1]

**23.** "Am I only a God nearby,"  
declares the Lord,  
"and not a God far away? **24.** Can anyone hide in secret places  
so that I cannot see him?"  
declares the Lord.  
"Do not I fill heaven and earth?"  
declares the Lord.

#### **Acts 17:24-25** [1]

**24.** "The God who made the world and everything in it is the Lord  
of heaven and earth and does not live in temples built by hands.  
**25.** And he is not served by human hands, as if he needed  
anything, because he himself gives all men life and breath and  
everything else.

#### **Matthew 6:25-34** [2]

##### **25.** Do Not Worry

"Therefore I tell you, do not worry about your life, what you will eat  
or drink; or about your body, what you will wear. Is not life more  
important than food, and the body more important than clothes?  
**26.** Look at the birds of the air; they do not sow or reap or store  
away in barns, and yet your heavenly Father feeds them. Are you  
not much more valuable than they? **27.** Who of you by worrying can  
add a single hour to his life? **28.** "And why do you worry about  
clothes? See how the lilies of the field grow. They do not labor or  
spin. **29.** Yet I tell you that not even Solomon in all his splendor  
was dressed like one of these. **30.** If that is how God clothes the  
grass of the field, which is here today and tomorrow is thrown  
into the fire, will he not much more clothe you, O you of little  
faith? **31.** So do not worry, saying, 'What shall we eat?' or 'What  
shall we drink?' or 'What shall we wear?' **32.** For the pagans run  
after all these things, and your heavenly Father knows that you  
need them. **33.** But seek first his kingdom and his righteousness,  
and all these things will be given to you as well. **34.** Therefore do  
not worry about tomorrow, for tomorrow will worry about itself.  
Each day has enough trouble of its own.

### Question 121

## Why is there added, Who art in heaven?

These words teach us not to think of God's heavenly majesty in an earthly manner, [1]  
and to expect from His almighty power all things we need for body and soul. [2]

### **Romans 8:31-32** [2]

**31.** What, then, shall we say in response to this? If God is for us,  
who can be against us? **32.** He who did not spare his own Son, but  
gave him up for us all—how will he not also, along with him,  
graciously give us all things?

## Question 122

### What is the first petition?

Hallowed be Thy Name. That is: Grant us first of all that we may rightly know Thee, [1]  
and sanctify, glorify, and praise Thee in all Thy works, in which shine forth Thy almighty power, wisdom, goodness, righteousness, mercy, and truth. [2]  
Grant us also that we may so direct our whole life-- our thoughts, words, and actions-- that Thy Name is not blasphemed because of us but always honoured and praised. [3]

#### **Jeremiah 9:23-24** [1]

23. This is what the Lord says:  
"Let not the wise man boast of his wisdom  
or the strong man boast of his strength  
or the rich man boast of his riches, 24. but let him who boasts  
boast about this:  
that he understands and knows me,  
that I am the Lord, who exercises kindness,  
justice and righteousness on earth,  
for in these I delight,"  
declares the Lord.

#### **Jeremiah 31:33-34** [1]

33. "This is the covenant I will make with the house of Israel  
after that time," declares the Lord.  
"I will put my law in their minds  
and write it on their hearts.  
I will be their God,  
and they will be my people. 34. No longer will a man teach his  
neighbor,  
or a man his brother, saying, 'Know the Lord,'  
because they will all know me,  
from the least of them to the greatest,"  
declares the Lord.  
"For I will forgive their wickedness  
and will remember their sins no more."

#### **Matthew 16:17** [1]

17. Jesus replied, "Blessed are you, Simon son of Jonah, for this  
was not revealed to you by man, but by my Father in heaven.

## Question 122

### What is the first petition?

Hallowed be Thy Name. That is: Grant us first of all that we may rightly know Thee, [1]  
and sanctify, glorify, and praise Thee in all Thy works, in which shine forth Thy almighty power, wisdom, goodness, righteousness, mercy, and truth. [2]

Grant us also that we may so direct our whole life-- our thoughts, words, and actions-- that Thy Name is not blasphemed because of us but always honoured and praised. [3]

#### **John 17:3** [1]

3. Now this is eternal life: that they may know you, the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom you have sent.

#### **Psalms 145** [2]

#### **Exodus 34:5-8** [2]

5. Then the Lord came down in the cloud and stood there with him and proclaimed his name, the Lord. 6. And he passed in front of Moses, proclaiming, "The Lord, the Lord, the compassionate and gracious God, slow to anger, abounding in love and faithfulness, 7. maintaining love to thousands, and forgiving wickedness, rebellion and sin. Yet he does not leave the guilty unpunished; he punishes the children and their children for the sin of the fathers to the third and fourth generation." 8. Moses bowed to the ground at once and worshiped.

## Question 122

### What is the first petition?

Hallowed be Thy Name. That is: Grant us first of all that we may rightly know Thee, [1]

and sanctify, glorify, and praise Thee in all Thy works, in which shine forth Thy almighty power, wisdom, goodness, righteousness, mercy, and truth. [2]

Grant us also that we may so direct our whole life-- our thoughts, words, and actions-- that Thy Name is not blasphemed because of us but always honoured and praised. [3]

#### **Jeremiah 32:16-20** [2]

**16.** "After I had given the deed of purchase to Baruch son of Neriah, I prayed to the Lord: **17.** "Ah, Sovereign Lord, you have made the heavens and the earth by your great power and outstretched arm. Nothing is too hard for you. **18.** You show love to thousands but bring the punishment for the fathers' sins into the laps of their children after them. O great and powerful God, whose name is the Lord Almighty, **19.** great are your purposes and mighty are your deeds. Your eyes are open to all the ways of men; you reward everyone according to his conduct and as his deeds deserve. **20.** You performed miraculous signs and wonders in Egypt and have continued them to this day, both in Israel and among all mankind, and have gained the renown that is still yours.

#### **Luke 1:46-55** [2]

**46.** Mary's Song

And Mary said:

"My soul glorifies the Lord **47.** and my spirit rejoices in God my Savior, **48.** for he has been mindful of the humble state of his servant.

From now on all generations will call me blessed, **49.** for the Mighty One has done great things for me—

holy is his name. **50.** His mercy extends to those who fear him, from generation to generation. **51.** He has performed mighty deeds with his arm;

he has scattered those who are proud in their inmost thoughts.

**52.** He has brought down rulers from their thrones

but has lifted up the humble. **53.** He has filled the hungry with good things

but has sent the rich away empty. **54.** He has helped his servant Israel,

remembering to be merciful **55.** to Abraham and his descendants forever,

even as he said to our fathers."

## Question 122

### What is the first petition?

Hallowed be Thy Name. That is: Grant us first of all that we may rightly know Thee, [1]  
and sanctify, glorify, and praise Thee in all Thy works, in which shine forth Thy almighty power, wisdom, goodness, righteousness, mercy, and truth. [2]

Grant us also that we may so direct our whole life-- our thoughts, words, and actions-- that Thy Name is not blasphemed because of us but always honoured and praised. [3]

#### **Luke 1:68-75** [2]

**68.** "Praise be to the Lord, the God of Israel,  
because he has come and has redeemed his people. **69.** He has  
raised up a horn of salvation for us  
in the house of his servant David **70.** (as he said through his holy  
prophets of long ago), **71.** salvation from our enemies  
and from the hand of all who hate us— **72.** to show mercy to our  
fathers  
and to remember his holy covenant, **73.** the oath he swore to our  
father Abraham: **74.** to rescue us from the hand of our enemies,  
and to enable us to serve him without fear **75.** in holiness and  
righteousness before him all our days.

#### **Romans 11: 33-36** [2]

##### **33.** Doxology

Oh, the depth of the riches of the wisdom and knowledge of God!  
How unsearchable his judgments,  
and his paths beyond tracing out! **34.** "Who has known the mind of  
the Lord?  
Or who has been his counselor?" **35.** "Who has ever given to God,  
that God should repay him?" **36.** For from him and through him and  
to him are all things.

To him be the glory forever! Amen.

#### **Psalms 115:1** [3]

##### **1.** Psalm 115

Not to us, O Lord, not to us  
but to your name be the glory,  
because of your love and faithfulness.

#### **Matthew 5:16** [3]

**16.** In the same way, let your light shine before men, that they may  
see your good deeds and praise your Father in heaven.



## Question 123

### What is the second petition?

Thy kingdom come. That is: So rule us by Thy Word and Spirit that more and more we submit to Thee. [1]

Preserve and increase Thy church. [2]


Destroy the works of the devil, every power that raises itself against Thee, and every conspiracy against Thy holy Word. [3]

Do all this until the fulness of Thy kingdom comes, wherein Thou shalt be all in all. [4]

#### **Psalm 119:5** [1]

5. Oh, that my ways were steadfast  
in obeying your decrees!

#### **Psalm 119:105** [1]

105.  Nun

Your word is a lamp to my feet  
and a light for my path.

#### **Psalm 143:10** [1]

10. Teach me to do your will,  
for you are my God;  
may your good Spirit  
lead me on level ground.

#### **Matthew 6:33** [1]

33. But seek first his kingdom and his righteousness, and all these  
things will be given to you as well.

#### **Psalm 51:18** [2]

18. In your good pleasure make Zion prosper;  
build up the walls of Jerusalem.

#### **Psalm 122:6-9** [2]

6. Pray for the peace of Jerusalem:

"May those who love you be secure. 7. May there be peace within  
your walls

and security within your citadels." 8. For the sake of my brothers  
and friends,

I will say, "Peace be within you." 9. For the sake of the house of the  
Lord our God,

I will seek your prosperity.

#### **Matthew 16:18** [2]

18. And I tell you that you are Peter, and on this rock I will build my  
church, and the gates of Hades will not overcome it.

## Question 123

### What is the second petition?

Thy kingdom come. That is: So rule us by Thy Word and Spirit that more and more we submit to Thee. [1]

Preserve and increase Thy church. [2]

Destroy the works of the devil, every power that raises itself against Thee, and every conspiracy against Thy holy Word. [3]

Do all this until the fulness of Thy kingdom comes, wherein Thou shalt be all in all. [4]

#### **Acts 2:42-47** [2]

**42.** The Fellowship of the Believers

They devoted themselves to the apostles' teaching and to the fellowship, to the breaking of bread and to prayer. **43.** Everyone was filled with awe, and many wonders and miraculous signs were done by the apostles. **44.** All the believers were together and had everything in common. **45.** Selling their possessions and goods, they gave to anyone as he had need. **46.** Every day they continued to meet together in the temple courts. They broke bread in their homes and ate together with glad and sincere hearts, **47.** praising God and enjoying the favor of all the people. And the Lord added to their number daily those who were being saved.

#### **Romans 16:20** [3]

**20.** The God of peace will soon crush Satan under your feet. The grace of our Lord Jesus be with you.

#### **1 John 3:8** [3]

**8.** He who does what is sinful is of the devil, because the devil has been sinning from the beginning. The reason the Son of God appeared was to destroy the devil's work.

#### **Romans 8:22-23** [4]

**22.** We know that the whole creation has been groaning as in the pains of childbirth right up to the present time. **23.** Not only so, but we ourselves, who have the firstfruits of the Spirit, groan inwardly as we wait eagerly for our adoption as sons, the redemption of our bodies.

#### **1 Corinthians 15:28** [4]

**28.** When he has done this, then the Son himself will be made subject to him who put everything under him, so that God may be all in all.

#### **Revelation 22:17** [4]

**17.** The Spirit and the bride say, "Come!" And let him who hears say, "Come!" Whoever is thirsty, let him come; and whoever wishes, let him take the free gift of the water of life.

### Question 123

## What is the second petition?

Thy kingdom come. That is: So rule us by Thy Word and Spirit that more and more we submit to Thee. [1]

Preserve and increase Thy church. [2]

Destroy the works of the devil, every power that raises itself against Thee, and every conspiracy against Thy holy Word. [3]

Do all this until the fulness of Thy kingdom comes, wherein Thou shalt be all in all. [4]

### **Revelation 22:20** [4]

20. He who testifies to these things says, "Yes, I am coming soon."

Amen. Come, Lord Jesus.

## Question 124

### What is the third petition?

Thy will be done, on earth as it is in heaven. That is: Grant that we and all men may deny our own will, and without any murmuring obey Thy will, for it alone is good. [1]

Grant also that everyone may carry out the duties of his office and calling [2] as willingly and faithfully as the angels in heaven. [3]

#### **Matthew 7:21** [1]

21. "Not everyone who says to me, 'Lord, Lord,' will enter the kingdom of heaven, but only he who does the will of my Father who is in heaven.

#### **Matthew 16:24-26** [1]

24. Then Jesus said to his disciples, "If anyone would come after me, he must deny himself and take up his cross and follow me. 25. For whoever wants to save his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life for me will find it. 26. What good will it be for a man if he gains the whole world, yet forfeits his soul? Or what can a man give in exchange for his soul?

#### **Luke 22:42** [1]

42. "Father, if you are willing, take this cup from me; yet not my will, but yours be done."

#### **Romans 12:1-2** [1]

##### 1. Living Sacrifices

Therefore, I urge you, brothers, in view of God's mercy, to offer your bodies as living sacrifices, holy and pleasing to God—this is your spiritual act of worship. 2. Do not conform any longer to the pattern of this world, but be transformed by the renewing of your mind. Then you will be able to test and approve what God's will is—his good, pleasing and perfect will.

#### **Titus 2:11-12** [1]

11. For the grace of God that brings salvation has appeared to all men. 12. It teaches us to say "No" to ungodliness and worldly passions, and to live self-controlled, upright and godly lives in this present age,

## Question 124

### What is the third petition?

Thy will be done, on earth as it is in heaven. That is: Grant that we and all men may deny our own will, and without any murmuring obey Thy will, for it alone is good. [1]

Grant also that everyone may carry out the duties of his office and calling [2] as willingly and faithfully as the angels in heaven. [3]

#### **1 Corinthians 7:17-24** [2]

**17.** Nevertheless, each one should retain the place in life that the Lord assigned to him and to which God has called him. This is the rule I lay down in all the churches. **18.** Was a man already circumcised when he was called? He should not become uncircumcised. Was a man uncircumcised when he was called? He should not be circumcised. **19.** Circumcision is nothing and uncircumcision is nothing. Keeping God's commands is what counts. **20.** Each one should remain in the situation which he was in when God called him. **21.** Were you a slave when you were called? Don't let it trouble you—although if you can gain your freedom, do so. **22.** For he who was a slave when he was called by the Lord is the Lord's freedman; similarly, he who was a free man when he was called is Christ's slave. **23.** You were bought at a price; do not become slaves of men. **24.** Brothers, each man, as responsible to God, should remain in the situation God called him to.

#### **Ephesians 6:5-9** [2]

##### **5. Slaves and Masters**

Slaves, obey your earthly masters with respect and fear, and with sincerity of heart, just as you would obey Christ. **6.** Obey them not only to win their favor when their eye is on you, but like slaves of Christ, doing the will of God from your heart. **7.** Serve wholeheartedly, as if you were serving the Lord, not men, **8.** because you know that the Lord will reward everyone for whatever good he does, whether he is slave or free. **9.** And masters, treat your slaves in the same way. Do not threaten them, since you know that he who is both their Master and yours is in heaven, and there is no favoritism with him.

#### **Psalms 103:20-21** [3]

**20.** Praise the Lord, you his angels,  
you mighty ones who do his bidding,  
who obey his word. **21.** Praise the Lord, all his heavenly hosts,  
you his servants who do his will.

## Question 125

### What is the fourth petition?

Give us this day our daily bread. That is: Provide us with all our bodily needs [1]  
so that we may acknowledge that Thou art the only fountain of all good, [2]  
and that our care and labour, and also Thy gifts, cannot do us any good without Thy blessing. [3]  
Grant therefore that we may withdraw our trust from all creatures, and place it only in Thee. [4]

#### **Psalm 104:27-30** [1]

27. These all look to you  
to give them their food at the proper time. 28. When you give it to  
them,  
they gather it up;  
when you open your hand,  
they are satisfied with good things. 29. When you hide your face,  
they are terrified;  
when you take away their breath,  
they die and return to the dust. 30. When you send your Spirit,  
they are created,  
and you renew the face of the earth.

#### **Psalm 145:15-16** [1]

15. The eyes of all look to you,  
and you give them their food at the proper time. 16. You open your  
hand  
and satisfy the desires of every living thing.

#### **Matthew 6:25-34** [1]

##### **25. Do Not Worry**

"Therefore I tell you, do not worry about your life, what you will eat  
or drink; or about your body, what you will wear. Is not life more  
important than food, and the body more important than clothes?  
26. Look at the birds of the air; they do not sow or reap or store  
away in barns, and yet your heavenly Father feeds them. Are you  
not much more valuable than they? 27. Who of you by worrying can  
add a single hour to his life? 28. "And why do you worry about  
clothes? See how the lilies of the field grow. They do not labor or  
spin. 29. Yet I tell you that not even Solomon in all his splendor  
was dressed like one of these. 30. If that is how God clothes the  
grass of the field, which is here today and tomorrow is thrown  
into the fire, will he not much more clothe you, O you of little  
faith? 31. So do not worry, saying, 'What shall we eat?' or 'What  
shall we drink?' or 'What shall we wear?' 32. For the pagans run  
after all these things, and your heavenly Father knows that you  
need them. 33. But seek first his kingdom and his righteousness,  
and all these things will be given to you as well. 34. Therefore do  
not worry about tomorrow, for tomorrow will worry about itself.  
Each day has enough trouble of its own.

## Question 125

### What is the fourth petition?

Give us this day our daily bread. That is: Provide us with all our bodily needs [1]  
so that we may acknowledge that Thou art the only fountain of all good, [2]  
and that our care and labour, and also Thy gifts, cannot do us any good without Thy blessing. [3]  
Grant therefore that we may withdraw our trust from all creatures, and place it only in Thee. [4]

#### **Acts 14:17** [2]

17. Yet he has not left himself without testimony: He has shown kindness by giving you rain from heaven and crops in their seasons; he provides you with plenty of food and fills your hearts with joy.”

#### **Acts 17:25** [2]

25. And he is not served by human hands, as if he needed anything, because he himself gives all men life and breath and everything else.

#### **James 1:17** [2]

17. Every good and perfect gift is from above, coming down from the Father of the heavenly lights, who does not change like shifting shadows.

#### **Deuteronomy 8:3** [3]

3. He humbled you, causing you to hunger and then feeding you with manna, which neither you nor your fathers had known, to teach you that man does not live on bread alone but on every word that comes from the mouth of the Lord.

#### **Psalms 37:16** [3]

16. Better the little that the righteous have than the wealth of many wicked;

#### **Psalms 127:1-2** [3]

1. Psalm 127

A song of ascents. Of Solomon.

Unless the Lord builds the house,  
its builders labor in vain.

Unless the Lord watches over the city,  
the watchmen stand guard in vain. 2. In vain you rise early  
and stay up late,  
toiling for food to eat—  
for he grants sleep to those he loves.

#### **1 Corinthians 15:58** [3]

58. Therefore, my dear brothers, stand firm. Let nothing move you. Always give yourselves fully to the work of the Lord, because you know that your labor in the Lord is not in vain.

## Question 125

### What is the fourth petition?

Give us this day our daily bread. That is: Provide us with all our bodily needs [1]  
so that we may acknowledge that Thou art the only fountain of all good, [2]  
and that our care and labour, and also Thy gifts, cannot do us any good without Thy blessing. [3]  
Grant therefore that we may withdraw our trust from all creatures, and place it only in Thee. [4]

#### **Psalm 55:22** [4]

22. Cast your cares on the Lord  
and he will sustain you;  
he will never let the righteous fall.

#### **Psalm 62** [4]



## Question 125

### What is the fourth petition?

Give us this day our daily bread. That is: Provide us with all our bodily needs [1]  
so that we may acknowledge that Thou art the only fountain of all good, [2]  
and that our care and labour, and also Thy gifts, cannot do us any good without Thy blessing. [3]  
Grant therefore that we may withdraw our trust from all creatures, and place it only in Thee. [4]

#### **Psalm 146** [4]

#### **Jeremiah 17:5-8** [4]

5. This is what the Lord says:  
"Cursed is the one who trusts in man,  
who depends on flesh for his strength  
and whose heart turns away from the Lord. 6. He will be like a bush  
in the wastelands;  
he will not see prosperity when it comes.  
He will dwell in the parched places of the desert,  
in a salt land where no one lives. 7. "But blessed is the man who  
trusts in the Lord,  
whose confidence is in him. 8. He will be like a tree planted by the  
water  
that sends out its roots by the stream.  
It does not fear when heat comes;  
its leaves are always green.  
It has no worries in a year of drought  
and never fails to bear fruit."

## Question 125

### What is the fourth petition?

Give us this day our daily bread. That is: Provide us with all our bodily needs [1]  
so that we may acknowledge that Thou art the only fountain of all good, [2]  
and that our care and labour, and also Thy gifts, cannot do us any good without Thy blessing. [3]  
Grant therefore that we may withdraw our trust from all creatures, and place it only in Thee. [4]

#### **Hebrews 13:5-6** [4]

5. Keep your lives free from the love of money and be content with what you have, because God has said,  
"Never will I leave you;  
never will I forsake you." 6. So we say with confidence,  
"The Lord is my helper; I will not be afraid.  
What can man do to me?"

## Question 126

### What is the fifth petition?

And forgive us our debts, as we also have forgiven our debtors. That is: For the sake of Christ's blood, do not impute to us, wretched sinners; any of our transgressions, nor the evil which still clings to us, [1]  
as we also find this evidence of Thy grace in us that we are fully determined wholeheartedly to forgive our neighbor. [2]

#### **Psalm 51:1-7** [1]

##### 1. Psalm 51

For the director of music. A psalm of David. When the prophet Nathan came to him after David had committed adultery with Bathsheba.

Have mercy on me, O God,  
according to your unfailing love;  
according to your great compassion  
blot out my transgressions. 2. Wash away all my iniquity  
and cleanse me from my sin. 3. For I know my transgressions,  
and my sin is always before me. 4. Against you, you only, have I  
sinned  
and done what is evil in your sight,  
so that you are proved right when you speak  
and justified when you judge. 5. Surely I was sinful at birth,  
sinful from the time my mother conceived me. 6. Surely you desire  
truth in the inner parts;  
you teach me wisdom in the inmost place. 7. Cleanse me with  
hyssop, and I will be clean;  
wash me, and I will be whiter than snow.

#### **Psalm 143:2** [1]

2. Do not bring your servant into judgment,  
for no one living is righteous before you.

#### **Romans 8:1** [1]

##### 1. Life Through the Spirit

Therefore, there is now no condemnation for those who are in Christ Jesus,

#### **1 John 2:1-2** [1]

1. My dear children, I write this to you so that you will not sin. But if anybody does sin, we have one who speaks to the Father in our defense—Jesus Christ, the Righteous One. 2. He is the atoning sacrifice for our sins, and not only for ours but also for the sins of the whole world.

#### **Matthew 6:14-15** [2]

14. For if you forgive men when they sin against you, your heavenly Father will also forgive you. 15. But if you do not forgive men their sins, your Father will not forgive your sins.

### Question 126

## What is the fifth petition?

And forgive us our debts, as we also have forgiven our debtors. That is: For the sake of Christ's blood, do not impute to us, wretched sinners; any of our transgressions, nor the evil which still clings to us, [1]  
as we also find this evidence of Thy grace in us that we are fully determined wholeheartedly to forgive our neighbor. [2]

**Matthew 18:21-35** [2]

## Question 127

### What is the sixth petition?

And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from the evil one. That is: In ourselves we are so weak that we cannot stand even for a moment. [1]

Moreover, our sworn enemies-- the devil, [2] the world, [3] and our own flesh [4]

-- do not cease to attack us. Wilt Thou, therefore, uphold and strengthen us by the power of Thy Holy Spirit, so that in this spiritual war [5] we may not go down to defeat, but always firmly resist our enemies, until we finally obtain the complete victory. [6]

#### **Psalm 103:14-16** [1]

14. for he knows how we are formed,  
he remembers that we are dust. 15. As for man, his days are like  
grass,  
he flourishes like a flower of the field; 16. the wind blows over it  
and it is gone,  
and its place remembers it no more.

#### **John 15:1-5** [1]

##### 1. The Vine and the Branches

"I am the true vine, and my Father is the gardener. 2. He cuts off every branch in me that bears no fruit, while every branch that does bear fruit he prunes so that it will be even more fruitful. 3. You are already clean because of the word I have spoken to you. 4. Remain in me, and I will remain in you. No branch can bear fruit by itself; it must remain in the vine. Neither can you bear fruit unless you remain in me. 5. "I am the vine; you are the branches. If a man remains in me and I in him, he will bear much fruit; apart from me you can do nothing.

#### **2 Corinthians 11:14** [2]

14. And no wonder, for Satan himself masquerades as an angel of light.

#### **Ephesians 6:10-13** [2]

##### 10. The Armor of God

Finally, be strong in the Lord and in his mighty power. 11. Put on the full armor of God so that you can take your stand against the devil's schemes. 12. For our struggle is not against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the authorities, against the powers of this dark world and against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenly realms. 13. Therefore put on the full armor of God, so that when the day of evil comes, you may be able to stand your ground, and after you have done everything, to stand.

#### **1 Peter 5:8** [2]

8. Be self-controlled and alert. Your enemy the devil prowls around like a roaring lion looking for someone to devour.

## Question 127

### What is the sixth petition?

And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from the evil one. That is: In ourselves we are so weak that we cannot stand even for a moment. [1]

Moreover, our sworn enemies-- the devil, [2] the world, [3] and our own flesh [4]

-- do not cease to attack us. Wilt Thou, therefore, uphold and strengthen us by the power of Thy Holy Spirit, so that in this spiritual war [5] we may not go down to defeat, but always firmly resist our enemies, until we finally obtain the complete victory. [6]

#### **John 15:18-21** [3]

##### **18. The World Hates the Disciples**

"If the world hates you, keep in mind that it hated me first. **19.** If you belonged to the world, it would love you as its own. As it is, you do not belong to the world, but I have chosen you out of the world. That is why the world hates you. **20.** Remember the words I spoke to you: 'No servant is greater than his master.' If they persecuted me, they will persecute you also. If they obeyed my teaching, they will obey yours also. **21.** They will treat you this way because of my name, for they do not know the One who sent me.

#### **Romans 7:23** [4]

**23.** but I see another law at work in the members of my body, waging war against the law of my mind and making me a prisoner of the law of sin at work within my members.

#### **Galatians 5:17** [4]

**17.** For the sinful nature desires what is contrary to the Spirit, and the Spirit what is contrary to the sinful nature. They are in conflict with each other, so that you do not do what you want.

#### **Matthew 10:19-20** [5]

**19.** But when they arrest you, do not worry about what to say or how to say it. At that time you will be given what to say, **20.** for it will not be you speaking, but the Spirit of your Father speaking through you.

#### **Matthew 26:41** [5]

**41.** "Watch and pray so that you will not fall into temptation. The spirit is willing, but the body is weak."

#### **Mark 13:33** [5]

**33.** Be on guard! Be alert! You do not know when that time will come.

#### **Romans 5:3-5** [5]

**3.** Not only so, but we also rejoice in our sufferings, because we know that suffering produces perseverance; **4.** perseverance, character; and character, hope. **5.** And hope does not disappoint us, because God has poured out his love into our hearts by the Holy Spirit, whom he has given us.

## Question 127

### What is the sixth petition?

And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from the evil one. That is: In ourselves we are so weak that we cannot stand even for a moment. [1]

Moreover, our sworn enemies-- the devil, [2] the world, [3] and our own flesh [4]

-- do not cease to attack us. Wilt Thou, therefore, uphold and strengthen us by the power of Thy Holy Spirit, so that in this spiritual war [5] we may not go down to defeat, but always firmly resist our enemies, until we finally obtain the complete victory. [6]

#### **1 Corinthians 10:13** [6]

13. No temptation has seized you except what is common to man. And God is faithful; he will not let you be tempted beyond what you can bear. But when you are tempted, he will also provide a way out so that you can stand up under it.

#### **1 Thessalonians 3:13** [6]

13. May he strengthen your hearts so that you will be blameless and holy in the presence of our God and Father when our Lord Jesus comes with all his holy ones.

#### **1 Thessalonians 5:23** [6]

23. May God himself, the God of peace, sanctify you through and through. May your whole spirit, soul and body be kept blameless at the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.

## Question 128

### How do you conclude your prayer?

For Thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, for ever. That is: All this we ask of Thee because, as our King, having power over all things, Thou art both willing and able to give us all that is good, [1]  
and because not we but Thy holy Name should so receive all glory for ever. [2]

#### **Romans 10:11-13** [1]

11. As the Scripture says, "Anyone who trusts in him will never be put to shame." 12. For there is no difference between Jew and Gentile—the same Lord is Lord of all and richly blesses all who call on him, 13. for, "Everyone who calls on the name of the Lord will be saved."

#### **2 Peter 2:9** [1]

9. if this is so, then the Lord knows how to rescue godly men from trials and to hold the unrighteous for the day of judgment, while continuing their punishment.

#### **Psalms 115:1** [2]

1. Psalm 115

Not to us, O Lord, not to us  
but to your name be the glory,  
because of your love and faithfulness.

#### **Jeremiah 33:8-9** [2]

8. I will cleanse them from all the sin they have committed against me and will forgive all their sins of rebellion against me. 9. Then this city will bring me renown, joy, praise and honor before all nations on earth that hear of all the good things I do for it; and they will be in awe and will tremble at the abundant prosperity and peace I provide for it.'

#### **John 14:13** [2]

13. And I will do whatever you ask in my name, so that the Son may bring glory to the Father.



## Question 129

### What does the word Amen mean?

Amen means: It is true and certain. For God has much more certainly heard my prayer than I feel in my heart that I desire this of Him. [1]

#### **Isaiah 65:24** [1]

24. Before they call I will answer;  
while they are still speaking I will hear.

#### **2 Corinthians 1:20** [1]

20. For no matter how many promises God has made, they are  
“Yes” in Christ. And so through him the “Amen” is spoken by us to  
the glory of God.

#### **2 Timothy 2:13** [1]

13. if we are faithless,  
he will remain faithful,  
for he cannot disown himself.